

**Krukovskaya O.A.,
Savitskaya N.V.,
Yermolova T.V.**

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

**УЧЕБНОЕ
ПОСОБИЕ**

**ДЛЯ СТУДЕНТОВ
НЕЯЗЫКОВЫХ ВУЗОВ**



МИНИСТЕРСТВО ПРОСВЕЩЕНИЯ РОССИЙСКОЙ ФЕДЕРАЦИИ
Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение высшего образования
«МОСКОВСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ ПСИХОЛОГО-ПЕДАГОГИЧЕСКИЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ»

Krukovskaya O.A.,
Savitskaya N.V., Yermolova T.V.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

IN THEORY AND PRACTICE

Учебное пособие
для студентов неязыковых вузов

Москва, 2026

УДК 81.2 (Англ. яз)

ББК 88.5

К84

Рецензенты:

*Щербакова О.Ю., к. филол. наук, доцент кафедры английского языка
ФГБОУ ВО «Дипломатическая академия МИД России»*

*Сибул В.В., к. филол. наук, доцент кафедры иностранных языков
экономического факультета РУДН имени Патриса Лумумбы*

Круковская О.А., Савицкая Н.В., Ермолова Т.В.

К84 English Grammar in theory and practice. Учебное пособие для студентов неязыковых вузов — М.: МГППУ, 2026. — 320 с. — Текст: электронный

ISBN 978-5-94051-362-9

Учебное пособие предназначено для формирования грамматических навыков у студентов неязыковых специальностей, изучающих английский язык. Оно включает теоретический материал и систему упражнений и тестов, направленных на развитие умений применять грамматические знания в различных видах речевой деятельности, включая профессионально-ориентированные контексты. Учебное пособие соответствует требованиям Федеральных государственных образовательных стандартов (ФГОС) и может быть использован в качестве основного или дополнительного материала на занятиях по английскому языку в неязыковом вузе.

УДК 81.2 (Англ. яз)

ББК 88.5

ISBN 978-5-94051-362-9

© ФГБОУ ВО «Московский государственный
психолого-педагогический университет», 2026

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ	5
PART I. TENSES / VOICE	8
English Tenses in Active Voice	10
<i>Unit 1.</i> The Present Simple Tense.	13
<i>Unit 2.</i> The Present Continuous Tense	22
<i>Unit 3.</i> The Present Perfect Tense.	31
<i>Unit 4.</i> The Present Perfect Continuous Tense	39
<i>Unit 5.</i> The Past Simple Tense	52
<i>Unit 6.</i> The Past Continuous Tense.	57
<i>Unit 7.</i> The Past Perfect Tense	62
<i>Unit 8.</i> Past Perfect Continuous	67
<i>Unit 9.</i> The Future Simple Tense	75
<i>Unit 10.</i> The Future Continuous Tense.	83
<i>Unit 11.</i> The Future Perfect Tense	87
<i>Unit 12.</i> The Future Perfect Continuous Tense	90
English Tenses in Passive Voice	100
PART II. TYPES OF QUESTIONS	110
PART III. DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	128
<i>Unit 13.</i> The author's words in the present tense	128
<i>Unit 14.</i> The author's words in the past tense. Sequence of tenses.	132
PART IV. VERBALS. THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS.	138
<i>Unit 15.</i> The Infinitive	139
<i>Unit 16.</i> The Infinitive Constructions: Complex Object.	154
<i>Unit 17.</i> The Subjective Infinitive Construction: Complex Subject	163
<i>Unit 18.</i> The Participle	176
<i>Unit 19.</i> The Absolute Participle Construction	205
<i>Unit 20.</i> The Gerund	213
PART V. THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	242
<i>Unit 21.</i> Conditional Sentences	242
<i>Unit 22.</i> Making a Wish	261

PART VI. MODAL VERBS	278
<i>Unit 23. Can / Could / Be able (to)</i>	280
<i>Unit 24. May / Might</i>	287
<i>Unit 25. Must / Have to / Be to</i>	294
<i>Unit 26. Should / Ought (to)</i>	304
APPENDIX.....	317
RESOURCES	319

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Цель данного учебного пособия — формирование грамматических навыков и умений у студентов неязыковых специальностей. Пособие содержит теоретический материал, а также многочисленные упражнения и тесты для аудиторной и для самостоятельной работы студентов, разработанные в соответствии с требованиями программы обучения иностранному языку в неязыковых вузах.

Пособие может служить как дополнением к основным учебникам и курсам, так и самостоятельным средством обучения. Оно способствует формированию профессиональной иноязычной коммуникативной компетентности, развитию аналитического мышления и умению применять грамматические знания в различных видах речевой деятельности, в том числе в профессионально-ориентированных контекстах.

Теоретическая часть представлена на русском языке, что, по мнению авторов, способствует снятию языковых трудностей при первичном знакомстве с грамматическими явлениями и обеспечивает более эффективное усвоение правил их образования и употребления. Примеры, сопровождающие теоретические объяснения, снабжены переводом, что способствует акцентированию внимания на наиболее сложных для русскоязычных студентов аспектах грамматики.

Структура пособия включает шесть разделов:

Part I. Tenses / Voice

Part II. Types of Questions

Part III. Direct and Indirect Speech. Sequence of Tenses.

Part IV. Verbals.

Part V. The Use of the Subjunctive Mood

Part VI. Modal Verbs.

Каждый раздел направлен на систематизацию теоретических знаний и совершенствование практических навыков по грамматике английского языка. Задания имеют многоуровневую структуру и включают элементы коммуникативного и творческого характера, что способствует развитию у студентов навыков грамматически грамотной спонтанной речи.

Материал организован по принципу постепенного усложнения и включает различные виды заданий: подстановка, перифраз, составление логических цепочек, множественный выбор, задания на перевод с русского языка на английский и наоборот, что позволяет не только закрепить изученные грамматические структуры, но и активизировать лексический запас обучающихся. Лексическое наполнение упражнений

ориентировано на студентов, владеющих базовой общеупотребительной лексикой английского языка, а также профессиональной терминологией, осваиваемой в процессе обучения в вузе.

Каждый раздел завершается серией упражнений на повторение и тестами, направленными на обобщение и контроль усвоенного материала. Таким образом, пособие объединяет функции грамматического справочника и сборника упражнений.

С методической точки зрения, пособие соответствует целям компетентностно-ориентированного подхода в обучении иностранным языкам. Его использование в образовательном процессе будет способствовать повышению уровня профессиональной иноязычной коммуникативной компетентности студентов и может быть рекомендовано для широкого применения в практике преподавания английского языка в высших учебных заведениях.

PART I.
TENSES/VOICE

Видо-временные
формы глагола

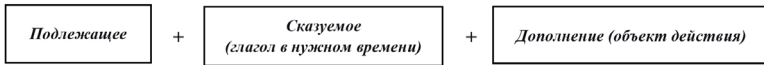
PART I.
TENSES / VOICE
Время и залог

Грамматическая категория залога определяет отношение между подлежащим и сказуемым в предложении с точки зрения направленности действия. Залог показывает, является ли подлежащее само исполнителем действия или действие осуществляется над ним. В зависимости от этого глагол в английском предложении может иметь форму активного или пассивного залога.

Активный залог (Active Voice): подлежащее, выраженное одушевленным/неодушевленным существительным или местоимением, само выполняет действие (выраженное глаголом) в отношении какого-либо объекта: *Tom has bought a new car.* = *Том купил новую машину.*

Пассивный залог (Passive Voice): подлежащее испытывает действие, которое совершается над ним: *The new car has been bought by Tom.* = *Новая машина куплена Томом.*

Построение предложения в активном залоге:



Подлежащее: Кто выполняет действие?

Сказуемое: Какого рода действие выполняется?

Дополнение: на кого/на что направлено действие?

Примеры:

1. *The cat (подлежащее) chased (сказуемое) the mouse (дополнение).* = *Кот поймал мышку.*
2. *The students (подлежащее) write (сказуемое) two tests (дополнение) each term (обстоятельство).* = *Студенты пишут два теста каждый семестр.*

Для выражения **времени** совершения действия — настоящего, прошедшего или будущего — и **вида** действия (одномоментного, пролонгированного или результативного) глагол в активном залоге может принимать одну из 12 видо-временных форм, связанных с взаимодействием этих двух грамматических категорий: времени (tense) и вида (aspect).

- Категория времени (tense) отражает хронологическое расположение действия и включает три формы: настоящее (Present), прошедшее (Past) и будущее (Future).
- Категория вида (aspect) указывает на характер протекания действия и подразделяется на четыре типа: неопределенный/простой (Indefinite/Simple), длительный (Continuous), совершенный (Perfect) и совершен-но-длительный (Perfect Continuous).

Времена группы Indefinite/Simple (Present Indefinite Tense, Past Indefinite Tense, Future Indefinite Tense) употребляются только для констатации факта совершения действия в настоящем, прошедшем и будущем, без указания на его длительность, законченность и безотносительно к какому-либо другому действию или моменту.

Времена группы Continuous (Present Continuous Tense, Past Continuous Tense, Future Continuous Tense) употребляются для выражения длительного действия, которое началось до определенного момента в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем и которое всё еще совершается, совершалось или будет совершаться в этот момент. Они описывают действие в процессе его совершения, выражая, таким образом, незаконченное длительное действие.

Времена группы Perfect (Present Perfect Tense, Past Perfect Tense, Future Perfect Tense) выражают действие, совершенное к определенному моменту в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем.

Времена группы Perfect Continuous (Present Perfect Continuous Tense, Past Perfect Continuous Tense, Future Perfect Continuous Tense) употребляются для выражения длительного действия, начавшегося до определенного момента в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем и длившегося известный период времени, включая этот момент. Кроме того, времена этой группы могут также выражать длительное действие, продолжавшееся известный период времени и закончившееся непосредственно перед определенным моментом в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем.

English Tenses in Active Voice

Видовременные формы глагола в активном залоге

		Present (tense) <u>V / V(e)s</u>	Past (tense) <u>V(ed) / V2</u>	Future (tense) <u>will / shall + V</u>
Indefinite/Simple (aspect)	«+»	<i>Anna works for an IT company.</i>	<i>Anna worked for an IT company last year.</i>	<i>Anna will work for an IT company.</i>
	«->»	<i>Anna doesn't work for an IT company.</i>	<i>Anna didn't work for an IT company last year.</i>	<i>Anna won't work for an IT company next year.</i>
	«?»	<i>Does Anna work for an IT company?</i>	<i>Did Anna work for an IT company last year?</i>	<i>Will Anna work for an IT company after graduating from the university?</i>
	Markers (adverbials, prepositions, conjunctions)	<i>always, usually, normally, often, sometimes, seldom (rarely), never, every time /day /week, once / twice a week /month / year</i>	<i>yesterday, last week/year/month, ago, in 2000, this morning (= it is now afternoon or evening), when</i>	<i>tomorrow, next week/month/ year, soon, someday, in 2030, later, in an hour</i>
Continuous (aspect)		<u>am / is / are + V-ing</u>	<u>was / were + V-ing</u>	<u>will / shall be + V-ing</u>
	«+»	<i>Anna is working for an IT company this week.</i>	<i>Anna was working for an IT company this time last year.</i>	<i>Anna will be working for an IT company this time next year.</i>
	«->»	<i>Anna isn't working for an IT company this week.</i>	<i>Anna wasn't working for an IT company this time last year.</i>	<i>Anna won't be working for an IT company this time next year.</i>
	«?»	<i>Is Anna working for an IT company this week?</i>	<i>Was Anna working for an IT company this time last year?</i>	<i>Will Anna be working for an IT company this time next year?</i>
Markers (adverbials, prepositions, conjunctions)	<i>at the moment, (right) now, at present, today, this week / evening, always (= too often), constantly, repeatedly, still, currently</i>	<i>this time last year, at 5 o'clock, all night, the whole evening yesterday, still, while, always (for repeated actions), when</i>	<i>from 5 to 6 tomorrow, at 5 o'clock tomorrow, this time tomorrow/next year, for 3 days next week, all day long tomorrow, when</i>	

Perfect (aspect)	«+»	have / has + V3 <i>Anna has never worked for an IT company.</i>	had + V3 <i>Anna had never worked for an IT company before she was hired for this position.</i>	will / shall have + V3 <i>By the time Anna graduates, she will have found the position in an IT company.</i>
	«->»	<i>Anna hasn't worked for an IT company yet.</i>	<i>Anna hadn't worked for an IT company before she was hired for this position.</i>	<i>By the time Anna graduates, she won't have lost her position in an IT company.</i>
	«?»	<i>Has Anna ever worked for an IT company?</i>	<i>Had Anna ever worked for an IT company before she was hired for this position?</i>	<i>Will Anna have found the position in an IT company before she graduates?</i>
	Markers (adverbials, prepositions, conjunctions)	<i>how many times, how long, before (now), it's the first time, so far/up to now / until now, ever, yet, never, just, recently, already, since, for, finally, today / this morning</i>	<i>by the time, by, just, before, after, for, since, already, no sooner ...than, hardly / scarcely / barely, when</i>	<i>by the time, by then, by, before, when</i>
Perfect Continuous (aspect)	«+»	have / has been + V-ing <i>Anna has been working for an IT company for a year.</i>	had been + V-ing <i>Anna had been working for an IT company for a year before she was promoted.</i>	will / shall have been + V-ing <i>By the end of this year, Anna will have been working for an IT company for 6 months.</i>
	«->»	<i>Anna hasn't been working for an IT company for a year.</i>	<i>Anna hadn't been working for an IT company for long before it was shut down.</i>	<i>By the time the company shuts down, Anna won't have been working there for long.</i>
	«?»	<i>Has Anna been working for an IT company for a year?</i>	<i>Had Anna been working for an IT company for a year before she was promoted?</i>	<i>Will Anna have been working for an IT company for 6 months by the end of this year?</i>
	Markers (adverbials, prepositions, conjunctions)	<i>How long, all day, The whole week, since, for</i>	<i>How long, all day, for an hour before he came, since, for, for long</i>	<i>by the end of this day ... for 7 hours, by the end of this year ... for 5 years by next month</i>

В английском языке глаголы делятся на **правильные** (Regular Verbs) и **неправильные** (Irregular Verbs) в зависимости от того, как они образуют прошедшее время (Past Simple) и причастие прошедшего времени (Past Participle).

Правильные глаголы образуют Past Simple и Past Participle путем добавления окончания **-ed** к инфинитиву.

Форма глагола	Пример
Infinitive (V1)	work, live, try, stop
Past Simple (V2)	work ed , liv ed , tri ed , stop ped
Past Participle (V3)	work ed , play ed , tri ed , stop ped

Неправильные глаголы имеют уникальные формы Past Simple (V2) и Past Participle (V3), которые нужно запоминать (*See the Appendix, p. 206*).

Unit 1. The Present Simple Tense

V(-s) / (-es)

Случаи использования	Примеры	Перевод
1) действия, которые совершаются регулярно (часто, редко, иногда), в соответствии с режимом дня, или никогда	<p><i>I usually get up at 6 AM.</i></p> <p><i>We often/rarely/sometimes go to the gym on Sundays.</i></p> <p><i>Mary never* watches horror movies.</i></p>	<p>Я обычно встаю в 6 часов утра (режим).</p> <p>Мы часто/редко/иногда ходим в спортзал по воскресеньям (регулярность).</p> <p>Мэри никогда не смотрит фильмы ужасов.</p>
2) привычки и предпочтения	<p><i>He likes to watch comedies and she likes melodramas.</i></p> <p><i>I drink coffee every morning.</i></p>	<p>Ему нравится смотреть комедии, а она любит мелодрамы (предпочтение).</p> <p>Я пью кофе каждое утро (привычка).</p>
3) деятельность, отражающая устойчивое или постоянное положение дел в настоящем	<p><i>'What do you do?' — 'I work as an engineer at an IT company'.</i></p>	<p>Чем ты занимаешься? — Я работаю инженером в компании по разработке информационных технологий.</p>
4) событие (действие), которое произойдет в будущем в соответствии с графиком, расписанием (движение транспорта, мероприятий и т. д.)	<p><i>The plane takes off at 6 AM tomorrow.</i></p> <p><i>The movie starts at 9 PM.</i></p> <p><i>The conference starts at 10 AM on Friday.</i></p>	<p>Самолет вылетает завтра в 6 утра.</p> <p>Фильм начинается в 9 вечера.</p> <p>Конференция начнется в 10 часов утра в пятницу.</p>
5) умения, навыки	<p><i>I make pizza well.</i></p> <p><i>I speak English fluently.</i></p> <p><i>He manages a large team.</i></p>	<p>Я хорошо готовлю пиццу.</p> <p>Я говорю по-английски бегло.</p> <p>Он руководит большим коллективом.</p>

6) природные закономерности, объективные истины, (общеизвестные) факты	<i>Water boils at 100°C.</i> <i>The Earth revolves around the Sun.</i> <i>Cats hate water.</i> <i>If I come home late, my parents get angry.</i> (Конструкция « If + Present Simple , Present Simple » часто используется при указании на закономерность).	Вода кипит при 100°C (объективная истина). Земля вращается вокруг Солнца (научный факт). Кошки ненавидят воду (общеизвестный факт). Если я прихожу домой поздно, мои родители сердятся (закономерность).
7) указания, пошаговые действия, инструкции	<i>First, you add the sugar. Then, you mix it well.</i> <i>Turn left at the corner.</i>	Сначала добавьте сахар. Затем хорошо перемешайте (пошаговая инструкция). Поверните налево на углу (указание маршрута).

Примечания:

Never уже означает отрицание, поэтому не используем «don't/doesn't»:

✗ *Mary doesn't never watch horror movies.* → ✓ *Mary **never watches** horror movies.*

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular.

1. I think I am late. 2. We often visit our grandparents. 3. They live in New York. 4. You often walk very quickly. 5. Do you like skating? 6. Our dogs usually obey our instructions. 7. They usually box in the local fitness club. 8. We usually have breakfast before going to work.

Ex.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

cause(s)	close(s)	connect(s)	go(es)	live(s)	spea k (s)	take(s)
----------	----------	------------	--------	---------	-------------------	---------

1. Sonya **speaks** French very well. 2. Lena and Sasha _____ to the same club. 3. Bad driving _____ many accidents. 4. The shop _____ at 5 p.m. on Sundays. 5. My friends _____ in a very small flat. 6. The Olympic Games _____ place every four years. 7. The Panama Canal _____ the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

Ex.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs. Sometimes you need the negative.

believe	eat	flow	go	grow	make	set	tell	translate
---------	-----	------	----	------	------	-----	------	-----------

1. The earth **goes** round the sun. 2. Bananas **don't grow** in cold climates. 3. The sun ___ in the west. 4. Bees ___ honey. 5. Vegetarians ___ meat. 6. An atheist ___ in God. 7. An interpreter ___ from one language into another. 8. Liars are people who ___ the truth. 9. The River Amazon ___ into the Atlantic Ocean.

Ex.4 Correct the following statements.

*The sun rises in the west. → The sun **doesn't rise** in the west. It **rises** in the east.*

1. Snow melts in winter.
2. Dolphins live in forests.
3. The Sun goes round the Earth.
4. Spring comes after autumn.
5. The Japanese live in the south.

Ex.5 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Julia **doesn't drink** (not / drink) tea very often. 2 What time ... (the banks / close) here? 3. I have a car, but I ... (not / use) it much. 4. Where ... (Maria / come) from? Is she Spanish? 5. 'What ... (you / do)?' 'I'm an electrician.' 6. Look at this sentence. What ... (this word / mean)? 7. David isn't very fit. He ... (not / do) any sport. 8. It ... (take) me an hour to get to work in the morning. How long ... (it / take) you?

Ex.6 You ask Tom questions about himself and his family. Write the questions.

1. You know that Tom plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask him. → **How often do you play tennis?**
2. Perhaps Tom's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Tom. → ___ your sister _____?
3. You know that Tom goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask him. → _____?

- You know that Tom's brother works. You want to know what he does. Ask Tom. → _____?
- You're not sure whether Tom speaks Spanish. You want to know. Ask him. → _____?
- You don't know where Tom's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask him. → _____?

Ex.7 Complete the sentence with the correct verb in Present Simple.

- Every morning, Anna sits in silence for ten minutes before she starts her day. She says it helps her mind stay calm. Anna _____ (meditate) every morning.
- Dr. Lewis always checks his patients' emotional state before starting therapy.
→ How often _____ Dr. Lewis (ask) about their feelings first?
- Kevin loves reading books about positive thinking. He never watches reality shows.
→ What _____ Kevin (prefer)?
- I sometimes drink coffee before my online consultations, but I usually _____ (choose) tea because it's lighter.
- Maria works as a clinical psychologist. She _____ (help) people with anxiety and depression. Where _____ Maria (work)?
- The next mindfulness seminar _____ (start) at 6 p.m. on Friday.
- Our brain _____ (use) patterns from past experiences to understand new situations.
- I _____ (not understand) how to calm myself when I feel nervous.
- The human brain _____ (need) rest to process emotions.
- Smiling _____ (reduce) stress levels in many people.

Ex.8 Correct the errors.

✗ *I am not agree with your opinion.* → **✓** *I do not agree with your opinion.*
/ *I don't agree with your opinion.*

Part I.

- I'm not knowing Sam's wife.
- My roommate usually watch TV, listen to music, or going out in the evening.
- How often does they usually take a vacation?
- She never doesn't forget to water the plants, but he do.

5. What time does the train leaves for Paris?
6. The Earth moves around the Sun, isn't it?
7. Do the company invest in renewable energy sources?
8. Have they a house in the village?
9. He leave usually the office at 18.00 p.m.
10. Tom and Ann doesn't have a car.

Part II.

1. He often feel anxious in social situations.
2. Do she understands her own emotions?
3. They doesn't believe in therapy.
4. My brother worry too much about the future.
5. The train for our psychology conference leave at 9 AM.
6. Strong emotions affects our judgment.
7. I not need constant approval from others.
8. She know how to manage stress effectively.
9. First, you acknowledges your fear, and then you confront it.
10. People rarely changes their core values.
11. Does he remembers his childhood dreams?
12. We not often discuss our feelings.
13. It is a fact that positive thinking increase happiness.
14. He always try to control everything.
15. Do you has a fear of failure?

Ex.9 Choose the correct reason for using Present Simple.

<i>regular action</i>	<i>scientific fact / general truth</i>	<i>personal opinion, preferences</i>	<i>timetable / schedule</i>	<i>instruction / direction</i>	<i>a stable or permanent situation in the present (facts)</i>	<i>skills, abilities, competencies</i>
-----------------------	--	--------------------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------	---	--

1. She goes to the gym every morning.
2. He plays the guitar very well.
3. Water boils at 100°C.
4. My train leaves at 8:30 tomorrow.
5. Birds fly south in winter.
6. Add some salt and stir the soup.
7. She works as a dentist.
8. We meet for lunch twice a week.
9. I think this movie is amazing.
10. You turn right after the supermarket.
11. The bus arrives at the station on time.
12. We prefer classical music to pop.
13. He speaks three languages.
14. The company owns several buildings.

Ex.10 Read the situation and decide which type of Present Simple use it shows.

(1 — regular action; 2 — habit/preference; 3 — permanent situation; 4 — scheduled future event; 5 — ability/skill; 6 — general truth; 7 — instruction).

1. Every morning, Dr. Hall opens her journal and writes three positive thoughts before work.

Question: What kind of Present Simple is this? Why does she do it regularly?

2. I don't usually check my phone before meditation. It helps me stay focused.

Question: Does this sentence describe a repeated action or a fact?

3. My colleague prefers talking face to face rather than online.

Question: What does this sentence tell us about the type of Present Simple?

4. Do you often choose quiet music when you study?

Question: What type of Present Simple is used here?

5. Dr. Miller works in a hospital that helps people with trauma.

Question: Is this a temporary or a permanent situation?

6. The clinic doesn't open on weekends.

Question: Does this describe a regular schedule or a current action?

7. The mindfulness class starts at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

Question: What meaning of Present Simple can you see here?

8. Does the train leave at 7:30 or 8:00?

Question: Why can we use Present Simple for this sentence about the future?

9. My therapist understands people very quickly.

Question: Does this sentence describe ability or a current action?

10. Do you remember all the breathing techniques from the workshop?

Question: What kind of Present Simple use is that — habit or skill?

11. Smiling doesn't always mean happiness.

Question: Is this about one person or about people in general?

12. First, sit down and close your eyes. Then take a deep breath.

Question: What function does Present Simple have in this context?

13. Do not think about your problems now — just focus on your breathing.

Question: What kind of situation is this — a description or an instruction?

Ex.11 Read each sentence and choose the correct answer.

1) She listens to her clients carefully during every session.

a) scheduled future event b) regular action / routine c) general truth

2) The next therapy group meets at 6 p.m. on Friday.

a) scheduled future event b) regular action / routine c) general truth

3) I don't like talking when I feel tired.

a) habit or preference b) permanent or stable situation c) regular action / routine

4) The body reacts to stress in the same way every time.

a) general truth b) habit or preference c) regular action / routine

5) Do you help children with attention problems?

a) ability or skill b) permanent or stable situation c) habit or preference

6) Our office opens at nine and closes at five.

a) habit or preference b) scheduled future event c) permanent or stable situation

7) I never take notes during meditation.

a) habit or preference b) general truth c) instruction or direction

8) The workshop begins at 10:30 tomorrow morning.

a) scheduled future event b) permanent or stable situation c) ability or skill

9) First, close your eyes and relax your muscles.

a) instruction or direction b) ability or skill c) habit or preference

- 10) My teacher knows many techniques for reducing anxiety.
a) ability or skill b) regular action / routine c) permanent or stable situation
- 11) People often think too much about the past.
a) regular action / routine b) habit or preference c) general truth
- 12) Does she play soft music before the session?
a) scheduled future event b) habit or preference c) general truth
- 13) I believe that honesty builds trust.
a) general truth b) permanent or stable situation c) regular action / routine
- 14) The psychologist explains the task and asks questions.
a) regular action / routine b) ability or skill c) scheduled future event
- 15) The heart beats faster when a person feels afraid.
a) general truth b) regular action / routine c) habit or preference

Ex.12 Translate into English.

Part I.

1. Он редко смотрит телевизор. 2. Вода не замерзает при 10 градусах по Цельсию. 3. Тебе нравится это кафе? 4. Поезд прибывает в 7 часов вечера. 5. Вы идёте по улице прямо, а затем поворачиваете налево. 6. Она живёт в большом доме. 8. Он хорошо играет на гитаре? 9. Я никогда не пью кофе до завтрака. 10. Вы часто гуляете в этом парке? 11. Я никогда не покупаю продукты в этом магазине. Здесь очень высокие цены. 12. Мой друг живёт в Лондоне. 13. «Вы чувствуете что-нибудь?» — «Нет, я ничего не чувствую». 14. У нас три занятия французским языком в неделю. 15. Наш поезд уходит завтра в три часа дня.

Part II.

1. Как часто ты гуляешь в парке? 2. Он не помнит свои сны. 3. Она всегда находит силы для работы. 4. Понимает ли он причины своего состояния? 5. Мой внутренний диалог никогда не останавливается. 6. Я не верю

в случайности. 7. Групповая терапия начинается в 18:00? 8. Сильные эмоции влияют на принятие решений. 9. Они не зависят от мнения других. 10. Сначала ты осознаёшь свою реакцию, потом управляешь ею. 11. Есть ли у тебя время для расслабления? 12. Ребёнок нуждается в похвале. 13. Иногда она сомневается в себе. 14. Знает ли он о своих истинных желаниях? 15. Осознанность снижает уровень стресса.

Unit 2. The Present Continuous Tense

am / is / are + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие, которое происходит прямо сейчас (в момент речи) или в текущий период времени (не обязательно прямо сейчас)	<i>'What is she doing?'</i> — <i>'She is talking on the phone'</i> . <i>I'm taking a Spanish course this month.</i>	«Что она делает?» — «Она говорит сейчас по телефону (в данный момент)». <i>Я прохожу курс испанского языка в этом месяце (не в данный момент, а в данный период времени).</i>
2) действие, которое происходит в настоящем и описывает временное положение дел	<i>I am staying with my parents while my apartment is being renovated.</i>	<i>Я временно живу у родителей, пока моя квартира ремонтируется.</i>
3) запланированное действие в ближайшем будущем	<i>I'm flying to Paris next week.</i>	<i>Я лечу в Париж на следующей неделе.</i>
4) изменяющиеся или развивающиеся ситуации	<i>The climate is getting warmer.</i>	<i>Климат становится теплее.</i>
5) повторяющиеся ситуации, которые вызывают раздражение или недовольство (<i>часто с always, constantly</i>)	<i>He is always complaining!</i> <i>You are constantly interrupting me.</i>	<i>Он постоянно (всегда) жалуется!</i> <i>Ты постоянно перебиваешь меня!</i>

Сравнение Present Simple и Present Continuous

Present Simple	Present Continuous
Регулярные, повторяющиеся действия <i>I usually go to the cinema on Saturdays.</i>	Действия, происходящие в момент речи <i>I'm going to the cinema at the moment.</i>
Факты и объективные истины <i>The sun rises in the east.</i>	Временные действия и процессы <i>The sun is rising over the river right now.</i>
События согласно расписанию <i>The plane leaves tomorrow at 10 AM.</i>	Запланированные действия в ближайшем будущем <i>I'm leaving for Paris next week.</i>

Устойчивое или постоянное положение дел в настоящем <i>I live with my parents.</i> <i>She works as a teacher.</i>	Временное положение дел в настоящем <i>I am staying with my parents while my apartment is being renovated.</i> <i>She is working as a waitress for the summer.</i>
---	--

Примечания:

Present Continuous не используется с глаголами, выражающими состояния (state verbs), а не действия или процессы. К ним относят глаголы, которые описывают чувства, восприятия, мысли, желания/потребности, владение чем-либо, принадлежность чего-либо кому-либо, и т.п.

- *like, love, hate, prefer*
- *know, believe, understand*
- *have* (в значении «иметь»)
- *seem, appear*
- *belong*
- *want, need*
- *smell* (в значении «пахнуть») / *taste* (в значении характеристики вкуса) и др.

Они обычно используются Present Simple.

- *I'm tired. I want to go home. (not ~~I'm wanting~~)* = Я устала. Я хочу пойти домой.
- *I don't understand (not ~~I'm not understanding~~). What do you mean? (not ~~What are you meaning?~~)* = Я не понимаю. Что ты имеешь в виду?

Однако существуют устойчивые выражения, а также случаи, когда глаголы состояния могут использоваться в Continuous формах, чтобы подчеркнуть временность, изменение или эмоциональную окраску. Это часто встречается в разговорной речи (like/love/hate). Также, есть глаголы, которые, в зависимости от контекста, могут переводиться как глаголы состояния и как глаголы, выражающие действие, процесс (*smell, taste, think, see* и т.д.).

Примеры глаголов, употребляющихся как в Present Simple, так и в Present Continuous

<i>Глагол</i>	<i>Present Simple</i>	<i>Present Continuous</i>
<i>like/love/hate</i>	<i>I like this song. — Мне нравится эта песня (в целом).</i>	<i>I'm liking this song right now. — Мне нравится эта песня прямо сейчас.</i>
	<i>She loves chocolate. — Она любит шоколад (вообще).</i>	<i>I'm loving this party! — Мне очень нравится эта вечеринка!</i>

	<i>I hate waiting in long lines. — Я ненавижу стоять в длинных очередях.</i>	<i>I'm hating this weather today! — Я просто ненавижу эту погоду сегодня! (подчёркивает, что нравится / не нравится именно сейчас, временно)</i>
have	<i>I have a car. — У меня есть машина (владение чем-либо).</i>	<i>I'm having lunch. — Я обедаю (have lunch/breakfast/dinner/tea/supper — глагол действия, выражающий процесс)</i>
think	<i>I think he is right. — Я считаю, он прав (мнение).</i>	<i>I'm thinking about the problem. — Я обдумываю проблему (процесс обдумывания, действие)</i>
see	<i>I see the mountains from my window. — Я вижу горы из окна (восприятие).</i>	<i>I'm seeing my friend tonight. — Сегодня вечером я встречаюсь с другом (глагол действия «встречаться», «видеться с кем-то»).</i>
smell	<i>This perfume smells like roses. — Эти духи пахнут розами ((Это постоянное свойство духов, их запах, состояние).</i>	<i>Why are you smelling the milk? — Почему ты нюхаешь молоко? ((Ты совершаешь активное действие, чтобы проверить запах).</i>
taste	<i>The soup tastes salty. — Суп солёный на вкус. (Это свойство еды, её вкус).</i>	<i>The chef is tasting the sauce to see if it needs more salt. — Шеф-повар пробует соус, чтобы понять, нужно ли больше соли. (Он совершает действие «дегустации»).</i>
feel	<i>I feel happy today. — Я чувствую себя счастливым сегодня. (Это мое текущее эмоциональное состояние). This blanket feels very soft. — Это одеяло очень мягкое на ощупь. (Это постоянное свойство предмета).</i>	<i>The doctor is feeling my pulse. — Врач проверяет (ощупывает) мой пульс. (Врач совершает активное действие — «ощупывать», «трогать»).</i> <i>Why are you feeling the walls? — Почему ты ощупываешь стены? (Ты совершаешь целенаправленное действие).</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

1) Please don't make so much noise.	a) I'm getting hungry.
2) We need to leave soon.	b) They're lying.
3) I don't have anywhere to live right now.	c) It's starting to rain.
4) I need to eat something soon.	d) They're trying to sell it.

5) They don't need their car any more.	e) It's getting late.
6) Things are not so good at work.	f) <i>I'm trying to work.</i>
7) It isn't true what they say.	g) I'm staying with friends.
8) We're going to get wet.	h) The company is losing money.

Ex.2 Write questions. Use the present continuous.

1. What's all that noise? ____ ***What's happening?*** ____ (what / happen?)
2. What's the matter? _____ (why / you / cry?)
3. Where's your mother? _____ (she / work / today?)
4. I haven't seen you for ages. _____ (what / you / do / these days?)
5. Who are those people? _____ (what / they / do?)
7. The film is amazing! _____ (you / enjoy / it?)
8. We're not in a hurry. _____ (why / you / walk / so fast?)

Ex.3 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Please don't make so much noise. ***I'm trying*** (I / try) to work.
2. Let's go out now. It ***isn't raining*** (it / rain) any more.
3. You can turn off the radio. (I / listen) to it.
4. Kate phoned last night. She's on holiday with friends. (She / have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
5. Andrew started evening classes recently. (He / learn) Japanese.
6. The situation is already very bad and now (it / get) worse.
7. Tim (work) today. He's taken the day off .
8. Ben is a student, but he's not very happy. (He / enjoy) his course.

Ex.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. Why ____ (you, to wear) such a funny suit? — I ____ (to go) to a fancy party.
2. It's so quiet in the house! Where are the children? — They ____ (to sleep).

- Let's have a break and go out to lunch together. — I'm sorry, I can't. I ___ (to prepare) a very important project.
- You ___ (always, to come) late. Don't you realize it's not polite to keep people waiting?
- Jane ___ (to return) from her holiday tomorrow, isn't she? — Oh, yes, we are going to meet her at the station.
- As far as I know, he ___ (not, to look for) a new job. Therefore, he is unlikely to be interested in your offer.
- What ___ (they, to work at) at the moment? — I have no idea, but it seems to be something special. They ___ (to make) more and more experiments every day.
- I ___ (to move) to a new flat at the weekend. Perhaps you can help me if you ___ (not, to do) anything special.

Ex.5 Use the present simple or the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

- Diane can't come to the phone because she **is washing** (*wash*) her hair.
- Diane (*wash*) her hair every other day or so.
- Kathy (*sit, usually*) in the front row during class, but today she (*sit*) in the last row.
- Please, be quiet! I (*try*) to concentrate.
- (*you, lock, always*) the door to your apartment when you leave?
- My friend hasn't answered my letter yet. I (*wait, still*) for a reply.
- After six days of rain, I'm glad that the sun (*shine*) again today.
- Every morning, the sun (*shine*) in my bedroom window and (*wake*) me up.

Ex.6 Choose the right option.

- "Where's Andrew?" — "I (**don't know / am not knowing**)."
- "What (**do you laugh at / are you laughing at**)?"
- Anna is a good golf player but she (**doesn't play / isn't playing**) very often.
- I am sorry but I (**do not understand / am not understanding**). Can you speak louder?
- Listen! Someone (**sings / is singing**).
- You can turn the TV off. I (**do not watch / am not watching**) it.
- Misha is tired. He (**wants / is wanting**) to go home now.

Ex.7 Underline the correct item.

- I see / am seeing that the situation is out of control.
- These silk sheets feel / are feeling lovely and smooth.

3. The sausages *are tasting / taste* delicious.
4. Why do you *smell / are you smelling* the milk? Do you think it has gone off?
5. *Do you enjoy / Are you enjoying* the party?
6. What are you *thinking / do you think about*? You haven't said a word all morning.
7. That dress *looks / is looking* nice on you.
8. He *has / is having* a Siamese cat.
9. I *don't know / am not knowing* where she keeps the keys.

Ex.8 Use either the present simple or the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

1. I can't afford that ring. It ____ (cost) too much.
2. Look! It ____ (begin) to rain. Unfortunately, I ____ (have, not) my umbrella with me. Tom is lucky. He ____ (wear) a raincoat.
3. As a rule, I ____ (sleep) until 6 o'clock in the morning, and then I ____ (get) up and ____ (study) for my classes.
4. Shhh. Grandpa ____ (take) a nap in the living room. We ____ (want, not) to wake him up. He ____ (need) his rest.
5. Right now I ____ (look) at Janet. She ____ (look) angry. I wonder what's the matter. She ____ (have) a frown on her face. She certainly ____ (have, not) any fun right now.
6. I ____ (want) to figure out the meaning of this saying: "The pen is mightier than the sword." I ____ (know) that "mightier" ____ (mean) "more powerful", but what's a "sword"? What ____ ("sword", mean)?
7. Right now Martha is in the science building. The chemistry experiment she ____ (do) is dangerous, so she ____ (be) very careful. She ____ (want, not) to spill any of the acid. She ____ (be, always) careful when she does a chemistry experiment.

Ex.9 Read the situation and the sentence. Answer the guiding question to determine the specific use case of the Present Continuous (PC).

1. Situation 1:
You call your friend. She sounds a bit sad and her voice is shaky. I think she is crying.
Guiding Question: Is this an action happening at the exact moment of speaking or a regular action?

2. Situation 2:
Your friend is usually very confident, but this week she has an important exam and is doubting herself a lot.
She is feeling very insecure this week.
Guiding Question: Is this a permanent personality trait or a temporary state?
3. Situation 3:
You and your friend have made a firm plan to meet this weekend. You are telling another person about it.
We are meeting for coffee on Saturday.
Guiding Question: Is this a general habit or a definite plan for the near future?
4. Situation 4:
Your brother started therapy a few months ago. You notice he is talking about his feelings more easily than before.
He is getting better at understanding his emotions.
Guiding Question: Is this describing a sudden change or a gradual development?
5. Situation 5:
Your colleague has a habit of finishing your sentences for you. It really bothers you.
He is always interrupting me!
Guiding Question: Is this a neutral statement about a habit, or does it express irritation?
6. Situation 6:
You see a man pacing back and forth in the waiting room, looking at his watch every few seconds.
He is waiting for some important news.
Guiding Question: Is this an action in progress right now or annoyance / criticism?
7. Situation 7:
Your friend is on a three-month work assignment in another country.
She is working from our London office this quarter.
Guiding Question: Is this her permanent workplace or a temporary arrangement?

8. Situation 8:

You have bought tickets for a concert that is happening next week.

We are seeing our favorite band next Friday!

Guiding Question: Is this a fixed plan based on a prior arrangement (the tickets) or an action happening in the present period of time?

Ex.10 Task: Read the situation and the sentence. Answer the guiding question to determine the specific use case of the Present Simple (PS) or Present Continuous (PC).

1. Situation 1: Your friend has moved to a new city for a three-month internship. She is living in Berlin for three months.

Guiding Question: Does this describe a permanent residence or a temporary situation?

2. Situation 2:

You are watching your colleague work. His fingers are moving quickly across the keyboard. He is typing a report right now.

Guiding Question: Is this action happening at this very moment, or is it a general habit?

3. Situation 3:

You are explaining to a friend how to use public transport in your city. "First, you buy a ticket. Then you validate it in the machine."

Guiding Question: Is this a general instruction or a description of what someone is doing right now?

4. Situation 4:

You are discussing a train timetable with someone. "The express train departs at 15:07 from platform 2."

Guiding Question: Is this a scheduled future event or an action in progress?

5. Situation 5:

Your neighbor has a habit of slamming the door loudly every morning. He is always slamming the door!

Guiding Question: Is this a neutral statement of fact or an expression of annoyance about a repeated action?

6. Situation 6:
You are stating a fundamental scientific fact. “Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.”
Guiding Question: Is this an objective truth or a changing situation?
7. Situation 7:
You call a friend and hear the sounds of dishes and conversation in the background. “They are having dinner.”
Guiding Question: Is this action happening right now (at the moment of speaking), or is it their daily routine?
8. Situation 8:
You are describing someone’s profession and core duties. “She works as an architect. She designs buildings.”
Guiding Question: Does this describe a permanent state/skill or an action in progress?

Ex.11 Translate into English.

1. Что ты делаешь сегодня вечером? — Ничего особенного. — Слушай, я иду на концерт, и у меня есть лишний билет. Хочешь пойти? — С удовольствием. 2. Вечно ты закрываешь окна! Как ты можешь работать в такой душной комнате? — Но мне холодно! 3. Что ты готовишь? Так вкусно пахнет! — Это секрет. Я пробую новый рецепт. 4. Как ты думаешь, что нужно этому человеку? — Не понимаю, он не произносит ни слова. 6. Обычно я работаю в пятницу, но эта пятница — праздничный день, поэтому я гуляю в парке. 7. Ты весь мокрый! Дождь все еще идет? — Да, и становится все холоднее. 8. Завтра я встречаюсь с моим издателем. — Ты работаешь над новой книгой? — Да, и он хочет подписать со мной новый контракт.

Unit 3. The Present Perfect Tense

have / has + V-ed/3

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) Действие произошло в прошлом, но имеет отношение к настоящему моменту. Время действия не указывается или не имеет значения, важен сам факт совершения действия или его результат.	<i>I can't get into my house. I have lost the keys.</i>	<i>Я не могу войти в дом. Я потерял ключи. (Я уже потерял ключи, то есть действие уже произошло и относится к прошлому, но войти в дом я не могу сейчас — это и есть связь с настоящим.)</i>
2) Недавно завершившееся действие или ещё пока не завершившееся (<i>особенно с just, already, yet</i>)*	<i>'Would you like to eat?' — 'No, thank you. I have just had lunch'. I have already finished my work. I haven't finished my work yet.</i>	<i>«Не хочешь поесть?» — «Нет, спасибо. Я только что пообедал». Я уже закончил работу. Я ещё не закончил работу.</i>
3) Действие завершилось, но тот период, в котором оно происходило, ещё продолжается и может быть обозначен обстоятельствами времени <i>today — сегодня, this week/month/year — на этой неделе/в этом месяце/ в этом году</i>	<i>Our company has earned a lot of money this month. I have done much work today.</i>	<i>Наша компания заработала много денег в этом месяце. Я сегодня сделал много работы.</i>
4) Действие или состояние, начавшееся в прошлом и продолжающееся в настоящем (<i>обычно с указанием for или since</i>).	<i>I have known him since 1998. They have lived here for ten years. I have felt anxious lately.</i>	<i>Я знаю его с 1998 года. Они живут здесь в течение 10 лет. В последнее время я чувствую тревогу.</i>
5) Опыт/жизненный опыт. Может употребляться с наречиями <i>ever — когда-либо, never — никогда (ещё не был, не делал и т.д.)</i>	<i>She has been to Paris twice. Have you ever tried Korean food? Mary has never met him before.</i>	<i>Она была в Париже дважды. Ты когда-нибудь пробовал корейскую еду? Мэри никогда не встречала его прежде.</i>

Примечания:

***Already** употребляется в утвердительных предложениях в значении «уже» (действие произошло раньше, чем ожидалось). Обычно ставится перед смысловым глаголом или после have/has.

She has already finished her homework. = Она уже закончила домашнее задание.
(NOT: *She has finished her homework already*).

Yet употребляется в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях в значении «ещё / уже». Обычно ставится в конце предложения.

В вопросах → значение «уже?»

В отрицательных предложениях → значение «ещё не».

Have you finished your work yet? = Ты уже закончил работу? (NOT: *Have you yet finished your work?*)

I haven't finished my work yet. = Я ещё не закончил работу.

Present Perfect не употребляется, если указано конкретное (завершенное) время.

В этом случае употребляется Past Simple.

Have you ever been to Paris? — Yes, I have been there twice. I visited Paris in 2019 and last year. = Ты когда-нибудь был в Париже? — Да, я был там дважды. Я посетил Париж в 2019 году и в прошлом году.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Make sentences following the example.

1. the longest poem — to learn → This is the longest poem I've ever learnt.

1. the most difficult exam — to take →
2. the most wonderful present — to get →
3. the funniest joke — to hear →
4. the most hard-working person — to meet →
5. the best friend — to have →

II. (to see, this film?) — (never / twice) → **Have you ever seen this film? — No, I've never seen this film. / Yes, I've seen this film twice.**

1. (to try, to speak, Chinese?) — (never) →
2. (to drive, a car?) — (several times) →
3. (to break, one's arm?) — (once) →
4. (to get, letters, from abroad?) — (never) →
5. (to learn, poems, by heart?) — (many times) →

III. (to be, France?) — (never / several times) → **Have you ever been to France? — No, I've never been to France. / Yes, I've been to France several times.**

1. (to be, the Tretyakov Gallery?) — (once) →
2. (to be, France?) — (never) →
3. (to be, the Moscow Zoo?) — (three times) →
4. (to be, London?) — (many times) →
5. (to be, the Bolshoi Theatre?) — (never) →

IV. the first time — to hear this song → **It's the first time I've heard this song.**

1. the second time — to consult this doctor (I) →
2. not the first time — to make this mistake (you) →
3. the first time — to lie to somebody (she)? →
4. the third time — to fall ill — this year (the child) →

5. the first time — to help somebody (they)? →

Ex.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using the present perfect. Choose from these verbs:

<i>break</i>	<i>disappear</i>	<i>go up</i>	<i>grow</i>	<i>improve</i>	<i>lose</i>	<i>shrink</i>	<i>stop</i>
--------------	------------------	--------------	-------------	----------------	-------------	---------------	-------------

1. Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. →**Tom has lost his key.**
2. Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better. → Her English
3. My bag was here, but it isn't here any more. → My bag
4. Lisa can't walk and her leg is in plaster. → Lisa
5. Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2. → The bus fare
6. Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard. → Dan
7. It was raining ten minutes ago. It isn't raining now. → It
8. I washed my sweater, and now it's too small for me. → My sweater

Ex.3 Put in been or gone.

- 1) My parents are on holiday. **They've gone to Italy.**
- 2) Hello! I've just ____ to the shops. I've bought lots of things.
- 3) Tom has just ____ out. He'll be back in about an hour.
- 4) Alice isn't here at the moment. I don't know where she's ____.
- 5) You're very late. Where have you ____?

Ex.4 Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet.

- 1) After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?'
You say: No thank you. **I've just had lunch**.....
(have lunch)

- 2) Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, ‘Can I speak to Joe?’
You say: I’m afraid (*go out*)
- 3) You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away.
You say: Wait a minute!
(*not / finish*)
- 4) You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says,
‘Shall I phone to reserve a table?’ You say: No,.....
(*do it*)
- 5) You know that Lisa is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful.
You ask her:
.....? (*find*)
- 6) You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, ‘Where are you going for your holiday?’ You say:
..... (*not / decide*)

Ex.5 Choose the correct reason for using Present Perfect.

Past action connected with the present (result is important, not the time)	Recently finished action / still unfinished	Action finished, but the period is not finished	Action or state started in the past and continues until now	Experience / life experience
--	---	---	---	------------------------------

1. I have lived in this city for ten years. 2. I have never tried surfing. 3. “I’ve broken my phone, so I can’t call anyone.” 4. I have just spoken to him. 5. We haven’t had any meetings this week. 6. She has known him since childhood. 7. He has forgotten his wallet and can’t pay for the bus. 8. Have you ever climbed a mountain? 9. She has visited three different clients this morning. 10. She hasn’t found her passport, so she can’t book the tickets. 11. They have lived in this house since 2015. 12. I haven’t done my homework yet.

Ex.6 Correct the mistakes.

1. *Have you ever been at the Tretyakov Gallery?* → *Have you ever been to the Tretyakov Gallery?* ...
2. Have you already done your homework?
3. She has went to the cinema.
4. I've just took this book from the library.
5. I met him only once.
6. He hasn't never got a bad mark.
7. Have you ever was in Italy?
8. He has just finish his report.
9. I had a hard day today.
10. Have you yet spoken to the manager?

Ex.7 Fill in the gaps with *since* or *for*.

1. *Sue has been my best friendfor.....*
a long time.
2. The child has had a sore throat a
few days.
3. She's been at home*since*..... 6 o'clock in the
evening.
4. She's been on a business trip a
month.
5. The window has been open
morning.
6. They have lived here their
marriage.
7. Michael has been Ann's husband at least five
years.

8. Helen has changed a lot that time.
9. Nothing interesting has happened the last week.

Ex.8 Complete the answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:

be	be	eat	try	have	have	meet	play	read	see
----	----	-----	-----	------	------	------	------	------	-----

1. What's Mark's sister like? → I've no idea. I've **never met** her.
2. Is everything going well? → Yes, we **haven't had** any problems so far.
3. Are you hungry? → Yes. I much today.
4. Can you play chess? → Yes, but for ages.
5. Are you enjoying your holiday? → Yes, it's the best holiday for a long time.
6. What's that book about? → I don't know. it.
7. Is Brussels an interesting place? → I've no idea. there.
8. Do you like caviar? → I don't know. it.
9. Mike was late for work again today. → Again? He late every day this week.
10. Who's that woman by the door? → I don't know. her before.

Ex.9 Make questions with How long. She is ill. → How long has she been ill?

1. John has a cold. →.....
2. Mary is in love with Bruce. →.....
3. I know their secret. →.....
4. The Pitts have a car. →.....
5. Nick is on holiday. →.....
6. Mr. Jones is my boss. →.....

7. I hear some strange noises. →.....
.....
8. I see what you mean. →.....
.....
9. Mum has a bad headache. →.....
.....
10. Brian is at home. →.....
.....

Ex.10 Translate into English.

1. Я никогда раньше не бывала в этом магазине.
2. Это самая красивая мелодия, которую я когда-либо слышала.
3. Ты уже позавтракала? — Нет. Я только что встала.
4. Наконец-то ты пришел! Где ты был?
5. Это самая тяжелая работа, которую мне когда-либо приходилось делать.
6. Я не ездила за город с тех пор, как начала здесь работать.
7. Они уже переехали, но я их еще не навещала.
8. Вот твоя рубашка. Я ее постирала.
9. Уже очень поздно, а дети до сих пор не вернулись. Я очень волнуюсь!
10. Я давно знаю Ричарда. Мы соседи уже пять лет.

Unit 4. The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

have been / has been + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) Длительное действие, начавшееся в прошлом и продолжающееся до настоящего момента	<p><i>I have been studying English for five years.</i></p> <p><i>She has been working at the company since 2018.</i></p> <p><i>She has been talking on the phone for half an hour.</i></p>	<p><i>Я изучаю английский уже пять лет (и продолжаю изучать в настоящее время).</i></p> <p><i>Она работает в компании с 2018 года (и продолжает работать в настоящее время).</i></p> <p><i>Она разговаривает по телефону в течении полчаса (Она начала говорить полчаса назад и все еще продолжает говорить в данный момент).</i></p>
2) Длительное действие, которое недавно завершилось или только что завершилось, и его результат (последствие) виден или ощущается	<p><i>Amy is very tired. She has been driving for 6 hours.</i></p> <p><i>Her feet hurt. She has been walking all morning.</i></p> <p><i>Paul looks very exhausted. He's been working very hard recently.</i></p>	<p><i>Эми очень устала. Она была за рулем в течение 6 часов.</i></p> <p><i>Её ноги болят. Она ходила пешком все утро.</i></p> <p><i>Пол выглядит очень усталым. В последнее время он очень много работал.</i></p>
3) Действие, которое началось в прошлом и продолжается до настоящего момента с возможным повторением	<p><i>We have been trying to contact him all day.</i></p> <p><i>The rain has been falling all day, and there's no end in sight.</i></p>	<p><i>Мы пытаемся связаться с ним весь день.</i></p> <p><i>Дождь идет целый день, и не видно ему конца.</i></p>

Примечания:

С глаголами live, work, feel мы можем использовать как Present Perfect, так и Present Perfect Continuous, что не меняет смысла предложения.

I have lived / have been living here for twenty years. = Мы живем здесь 20 лет.

С некоторыми глаголами (например, *prefer, know, believe*) предпочтительнее использовать только Present Perfect, так как они описывают состояния или знания, которые не выражают длительность процесса.

I have known him for a long time. = Я знаю его уже долгое время.

He has believed in this idea for years. = Он верит в эту идею уже много лет.

She has preferred tea over coffee lately. = В последнее время она предпочитает чай кофе.

Сравнение Present Perfect и Present Perfect Continuous

<i>Present Perfect</i>	<i>Present Perfect Continuous</i>
Подчеркивает факт завершенности действия в период времени, который ещё не закончен в настоящий момент. <i>I have already walked my dog today.</i>	Подчеркивает длительность действия, которое началось в прошлом и продолжается до сих пор. <i>I have been walking my dog for an hour. It's time to go home.</i>
Подчеркивает факт завершенности действия, результат которого имеет значение в настоящем. <i>I have finished my work, so I can relax now.</i>	Подчеркивает длительность завершенного действия, результат (или последствия) которого мы наблюдаем или имеет значение в настоящем. <i>"You look tired. Have a rest."</i> — "Yes, I have been working a lot today."

Сравнение Present Continuous и Present Perfect Continuous

<i>Present Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Present Continuous</i>
Действие началось в прошлом и продолжается до сих пор. <i>I have been reading a book for two hours.</i>	Действие происходит в момент речи (не важно, когда оно началось) <i>I am reading a book now.</i>
Подчеркивается длительности действия. <i>She has been working on her project all day.</i>	Действие происходит в текущий период времени (временная ситуация) <i>She is working on her project today.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Write a question for each situation.

1. You meet Kate as she is leaving the swimming pool. You say:
Hi, Kate. (you / swim?) → ***Have you been swimming?***.....
2. You have arrived a little late to meet Ben who is waiting for you. You say:

I'm sorry I'm late, Ben. (*you / wait / long?*) →

- Jane's little boy comes into the house with a very dirty face and dirty hands. His mother says:
Why are you so dirty? (*what / you / do?*) →
- You are in a shop and see Anna. You didn't know she worked there. You say:
Hi, Anna. (*how long / you / work / here?*) →
- A friend tells you about his job — he sells phones. You say:
You sell phones? (*how long / you / do / that?*) →

Ex.2 Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Why is Lucy looking so tired? (*to work hard, lately*) → *She has been working hard lately.*

- Why are Pete and Tom looking at each other so angrily? (*to argue and quarrel, for at least an hour*)
- Why is your Mum looking so pale? (*to suffer from a headache, all day*) ...
- Why is the room in a mess? (*the children, to play, for the last two hours*)
- You look much thinner! Have you lost weight? — Yes, (*to diet, lately*).....
- (on the phone) Liz, you sound busy. — (*to do the housework, since morning*).....
- Have you come to any conclusion? — Not yet, but (*to think about the problem, since you told me about it*).....
- I think now you can sing this song with the player. — Oh, I'm not sure, (*to listen to it, for half an hour*), but I can't get several words.

Ex.3 Make questions with “How long”, using Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Nick is reading a magazine. → *How long has he been reading it?*

1. Mrs. Clown is waiting for you.
.....
2. The children are watching TV.
.....
3. The Tyrons are walking in the park.
.....
4. Mary is cleaning the flat.
.....
5. William is doing his homework.
.....
6. George is having dinner.
.....
7. Sarah and her friend are talking on the phone.
.....

Ex.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. *It's raining. The rain started two hours ago. → It's been raining for two hours.*
2. We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
We
..... for 20 minutes.
3. I'm learning Japanese. I started classes in December.
I
..... since December.
4. Jessica is working in a hotel. She started working there on 18 January.
.....
..... since 18 January.
5. Our friends always go to Italy for their holidays. The first time was years ago.
.....
..... for years.

Ex.5 Present Continuous vs Present Perfect Continuous. Use the present continuous or the present perfect continuous.

1. I _____ (wait) for you since you called me an hour ago.
2. She always smiles when she _____ (talk) to her clients.

3. We _____ (work) on this project for two weeks, but we still haven't finished it.
4. While you _____ (sleep), I _____ (try) to fix your computer.
5. He _____ (train) really hard since September because he has a competition next month.
6. Don't disturb them — they _____ (discuss) the report.
7. I _____ (sleep, not) well since the weather changed.

Ex.6 Present Perfect vs Present Perfect Continuous. Use the present perfect or the present perfect continuous.

1. It (snow) ___ all day. I wonder when it will stop.
2. We (have) ___ three major snowstorms so far this winter. I wonder how many more we will have.
3. It's ten p.m. I (study) ___ for two hours and probably won't finish until midnight.
4. I (write) ___ them three times, but I still haven't received a reply.
5. The telephone (ring) ___ fore times in the last hour, and each time it has been for my office mate.
6. The telephone (ring) ___ for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?
7. A: Hi, Jenny. I (see, not) ___ you for weeks. What (you, do) ___ lately?
B: Studying.
8. A: Dr. Jones is a good teacher. How long (he, be) ___ at the university?
B: He (teach) ___ here for twenty years.

Ex.7 Present Perfect vs Present Perfect Continuous. Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

1. Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.
_____ He has been reading for two hours. _____
_____ (read)
_____ He has read 53 pages so far. _____
_____ (read)
2. Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe. She began her trip three months ago.
She _____
_____ for three months. (travel)

- _____ six countries so far. (*visit*)
3. Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was 10 years old. This year he won the national championship again — for the fourth time. _____ the national championship four times. (*win*)
- _____ since he was ten. (*play*)
4. When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.
They _____ films since they left college. (*make*)
- _____ five films since they left college. (*make*)

Ex.8 Translate into English

1. Они обсуждают какой-то вопрос уже целый час. Неужели он действительно так важен? 2. Где Сэм? — Он в комнате. Он делает уроки с тех пор, как вернулся из школы. 3. Мэри много занимается на пианино в последнее время. 4. Сколько ты уже учишь это стихотворение? 5. Ребенок плачет с тех пор, как его мама ушла на работу. Я не знаю, что делать. 6. Я жду звонка от Фрэнка с трех часов, а он до сих пор не позвонил. 7. Я очень довольна нашей новой няней. — Сколько она у вас работает? 8. Я знаю своих соседей целую вечность. Они милые люди. 9. В последнее время Элис очень рассеяна. Ты не знаешь, что с ней случилось? 10. С каких пор ты здесь работаешь?

REVISION **(Present Tenses)**

Ex.1 Identify the tenses (the present simple, the present continuous, the present perfect, the present perfect continuous), and then match them to the correct description.

1	The plane to Sydney leaves at eleven o'clock.	a	actions which started in the past and continue up to the present
2	I have written two letters this morning.	b	action which has recently finished and whose result is visible in the present
3	They are going on holiday on Saturday.	c	to put emphasis on the duration of an action which started in the past and continues up to the present

4	Graham has known Errol for five years.	d	to express criticism or annoyance
5	You're always leaving the door open!	e	timetables and programs
6	We are rehearsing a new play at the moment.	f	actions that we have arranged to do in the near future
7	George has bought a new car.	g	action which has happened within a specific time period which is not over at the moment of speaking
8	Lisa has been cleaning the house all morning.	h	action which has happened at an unstated time in the past
9	Look! Alison has dyed her hair.	i	changing or developing situations
10	More and more people are recycling their rubbish.	j	temporary actions

Ex.2 Identify the tenses (the present simple, the present continuous, the present perfect, the present perfect continuous), and then match them to the correct description.

a) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present tense.

Dear Kathleen,

I **(write)** ___ to tell you my news.

My school **(choose)** ___ me to spend six weeks at a school in the USA. I'm very happy about it!

At the moment I **(pack)** ___ things for my trip, because I **(leave)** ___ next week. My mother **(book)** ___ the ticket. I **(wait)** ___ for this opportunity for ages, so I'm very excited.

I **(finish)** ___ reading two books about the USA and I **(borrow)** ___ another one from the school library. I **(become)** ___ more and more nervous every day!

Well, I must go now. I've got a lot of things to do. I'll write to you from the USA.

Love.
Tracy

b) Which of the present forms in the text above are used to express:

1. actions which has happened at an unstated time in the past
2. actions which started in the past and continues up to the present with emphasis on duration
3. actions happening at or around the moment of speaking

4. changing and developing situations
5. actions that we have arranged to do in the near future

Ex.3 Correct the mistakes.

1. I am knowing him since five years.
2. I am not understanding what you mean.
3. They work on this project right now.
4. He has wrote three articles this week.
5. We are knowing them for many years.
6. It rains all day — look outside!
7. How long do you wait for the bus?
8. I live here since 2018.
9. I have dinner. I can't come to the phone right now.
10. We have been paint the room all morning.

Ex.4 Translate into English

1. Она уже несколько месяцев готовит отчёты по новому проекту.
2. Почему ты всё ещё смотришь этот сериал? Ты начал его вчера!
3. Обычно мы встречаемся с клиентами по понедельникам, но на этой неделе встречи проходят каждый день.
4. Я не видел его в последнее время — он много работает.
5. Слушай! Соседи снова делают ремонт.
6. Он редко опаздывает, но в этом месяце уже три раза пришёл позже.
7. Мы живём в этом доме с 2015 года.
8. Ты выглядишь усталым — ты весь день разговариваешь по телефону?
9. Они постоянно спорят о планах на отпуск, и это начинает меня раздражать.
10. По расписанию конференция начинается в 10 утра, но сейчас докладчики готовятся за сценой.

TEST

Part I.

1. Where's Emma? — She _____ (just / go) out to buy some milk.
a) just goes b) has just gone c) is just going

2. Look! It _____ again. We'd better take an umbrella.
a) rains b) is raining c) has been raining
3. She _____ to yoga classes for the last two months.
a) has been going b) is going c) goes
4. We _____ each other since we met at university.
a) know b) are knowing c) have known
5. What's that noise in the kitchen? — Oh, Jack _____ the dishes.
a) has washed b) washes c) is washing
6. You're soaking wet! — I _____ in the rain.
a) have been walking b) walk c) walked
7. I _____ my phone. Can you call me, please?
a) lose b) have lost c) am losing
8. This coffee tastes strange. — Really? I _____ a new brand today.
a) try b) am trying c) have tried
9. They _____ in this city their whole lives.
a) live b) have lived c) are living
10. She _____ always _____ about her job — it's getting annoying!
a) is / complaining b) has / complained c) complains
11. I can't believe how dirty your hands are! What _____ you _____?
a) do / do b) are / doing c) have / been doing
12. The museum _____ at 9 a.m., so let's meet there at ten.
a) opens b) is opening c) has opened

Part II.

1. Look at him! He _____ a new computer game right now.
a) plays b) is playing c) has played

2. She _____ to the gym three times a week. It's her routine.
a) goes b) is going c) has been going
3. I can't believe it! I _____ my keys! I don't know where they are.
a) lose b) am losing c) have lost
4. You look tired. _____ properly lately?
a) Do you sleep b) Are you sleeping c) Have you been sleeping
5. The meeting _____ at 9 AM tomorrow. Don't be late.
a) starts b) is starting c) has started
6. He _____ the importance of mental health. He thinks it's not serious.
a) doesn't understand b) isn't understanding c) hasn't understood
7. The world's climate _____. This is a serious problem.
a) changes b) is changing c) has changed
8. First, you _____ the app on your phone. Then you create an account.
a) download b) are downloading c) have downloaded
9. _____ that new psychological thriller yet? It's amazing!
a) Do you see b) Are you seeing c) Have you seen
10. She _____ on this project since January, and she still isn't finished.
a) works b) is working c) has been working
11. My brother _____ in a different city, so I rarely see him.
a) lives b) is living c) has lived
12. Why _____ your phone right now? We're in the middle of a conversation!
a) do you check b) are you checking c) have you checked
13. This is the best book I _____.
a) ever read b) am ever reading c) have ever read

14. He _____ his negative thoughts. It's a real breakthrough for him.
a) always challenges b) is always challenging c) has always challenged

15. They _____ each other for ten years, since they were teenagers.
a) know b) are knowing c) have known

Part III.

1. Be quiet, please. The baby _____.
a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) has slept

2. I _____ my phone. Can I use yours to make a call?
a) lose b) am losing c) have lost

3. She _____ as a psychologist for five years.
a) works b) is working c) has been working

4. _____ to me? You seem distracted.
a) Do you listen b) Are you listening c) Have you listened

5. The sun _____ in the east.
a) rises b) is rising c) has risen

6. He _____ very hard these days to finish the project on time.
a) works b) is working c) has been working

7. First, you _____ the button, and the machine starts.
a) press b) are pressing c) have pressed

8. They _____ each other since they were children.
a) know b) are knowing c) have known

9. The train _____ in ten minutes. We need to hurry.
a) departs b) is departing c) has departed

10. She _____ all morning because her pet is sick.
a) cries b) is crying c) has been crying

11. I _____ my keys. Can you help me look for them?
a) don't find b) am not finding c) haven't found
12. My brother _____ constantly borrowing my things without asking!
a) always b) is always c) has always
13. _____ the news today? There's been a big development.
a) Do you hear b) Are you hearing c) Have you heard
14. He _____ to improve his mood by practicing gratitude every day.
a) tries b) is trying c) has tried
15. He _____ late for work lately, and his boss is getting angry.
a) arrives b) is arriving c) has been arriving

Part IV.

1. I _____ a great deal of stress at work this month.
a) experience b) am experiencing c) have experienced
2. She _____ never _____ to a foreign country.
a) does... travel b) is... traveling c) has... traveled
3. He _____ his room every Saturday.
a) cleans b) is cleaning c) has been cleaning
4. Why _____? It's not a sad movie!
a) do you cry b) are you crying c) have you cried
5. The museum _____ at 6 PM today.
a) closes b) is closing c) has closed
6. I _____ this book, so please don't tell me the ending!
a) don't finish b) am not finishing c) haven't finished
7. My English _____ a lot since I started practicing more.
a) improves b) is improving c) has improved

8. _____ how this machine works?
a) Do you understand b) Are you understanding c) Have you understood
9. She _____ for the exam all week and feels exhausted.
a) studies b) is studying c) has been studying
10. He _____ very patient with his children.
a) is b) is being c) has been
11. The flight from Paris _____ at 11:30.
a) arrives b) is arriving c) has arrived
12. I _____ to call him for days, but he's never home.
a) try b) am trying c) have been trying
13. _____ to the new podcast series? It's fantastic!
a) Do you listen b) Are you listening c) Have you listened
14. She _____ a lot of new people since she joined the club.
a) meets b) is meeting c) has met
15. First, you _____ the form and then you submit it online.
a) complete b) are completing c) have completed

Unit 5. The Past Simple Tense

V-ed/2

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие произошло и завершилось в прошлом в указанный конкретный момент времени и не связано с настоящим	<i>Simon Cook Painted his first picture in 1980.</i>	<i>Саймон Кук нарисовал свою первую картину в 1980 году (Когда? В 1980 г. Время указано.)</i>
2) действие завершилось в период времени, который уже закончился	<i>I walked my dog this morning.</i>	<i>Я погуляла с собакой сегодня утром. (Утро уже закончилось. Сейчас день, вечер или уже ночь).</i>
3) ряд действий, которые произошли сразу друг за другом в прошлом	<i>He got up, took a shower, had breakfast and went to work.</i>	<i>Он встал, принял душ, позавтракал и пошёл на работу.</i>
4) привычки и состояния в прошлом, которых уже нет в настоящее время (часто используется выражение used to)	<i>We used to go to the beach every summer. When I was younger, I didn't use to go to doctors.</i>	<i>Раньше мы ездили на пляж каждое лето. Раньше, когда я был моложе, я не обращался к докторам.</i>
5) действие, которое началось, продолжалось и закончилось в прошлом	<i>Mr. Clark taught Maths for thirty years.</i>	<i>Мистер Кларк преподавал математику на протяжении тридцати лет (в настоящее время он больше не преподаёт, он ушёл на пенсию).</i>
6) действие произошло в прошлом и не может больше повториться	<i>Mike won more than twenty medals when he was an athlete.</i>	<i>Майк выиграл более двадцати медалей, когда был спортсменом (Майк сейчас не занимается спортом и не участвует в соревнованиях).</i>

Сравнение Present Perfect и Past Simple

<i>Present Perfect</i>	<i>Past Simple</i>
Действие произошло в неопределённый момент в прошлом и имеет связь с настоящим. <i>I can't get into the house. I have lost my keys.</i>	Действие завершилось в указанное время в прошлом и не имеет связи с настоящим. <i>I lost my keys yesterday. I had to change a lock urgently.</i>
Действие началось в прошлом и продолжается до сих пор. <i>Mrs. Nelson has taught French for twenty years.</i>	Действие началось, продолжалось и закончилось в прошлом. <i>Mr. Clark taught Maths for thirty years.</i>
Действие произошло в прошлом и может повториться. <i>Ben is an athlete. He has won more than ten medals.</i>	Действие произошло в прошлом и не может больше повториться. <i>Mike won more than twenty medals when he was an athlete.</i>
Действие завершилось в период времени, который ещё не закончен в настоящий момент. <i>I have written three letters this morning.</i>	Действие завершилось в период времени, который уже закончился. <i>I wrote three letters this morning.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Make sentences about what really happened or didn't happen to you yesterday.

1. I, to have classes, yesterday. ___ *I had classes yesterday. / I didn't have classes yesterday*__.
2. My mother, to go shopping, after work _____
3. My friend, to phone, in the evening _____
4. I, to get up, early in the morning _____
5. It, to be one's day off _____
6. I, to see, a film at the cinema _____
7. My mother, to make, a delicious dinner _____

8. My friend, to invite to a party _____

9. There, to be, an interesting show, on TV _____

10. My parents, to plan, a holiday _____

Ex.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form.

buy	catch	cost	fall	hurt	sell	spend	teach	throw	write
-----	-------	------	------	------	------	-------	-------	-------	-------

1. Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
2. 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father me _____.'
3. We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we _____ it.
4. Dave _____ down the stairs this morning and his leg.
5. Joe _____ the ball to Sue, who _____ it.
6. Kate _____ a lot of money yesterday. She _____ a dress which _____ £100.

Ex.3 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. *It was warm, so I **took off** my coat. (take)*
2. *The film wasn't very good. I **didn't enjoy** it much. (enjoy)*
3. I knew Sarah was busy, so I _____ her. (disturb)
4. We were very tired, so we _____ the party early. (leave)
5. It was hard carrying the bags. They _____ really heavy. (be)
6. The bed was very uncomfortable. I _____ well. (sleep)
7. This watch wasn't expensive. It _____ much. (cost)
8. The window was open and a bird _____ into the room. (fly)
9. I was in a hurry, so I _____ time to call you. (have)
10. I didn't like the hotel. The room _____ very clean. (be)

Ex.4 Past Simple vs Present Perfect. Put the verb into the correct form.

1. I (attend, not) any parties since I came here.
2. Al (go) to a party at Sally's apartment last Saturday.
3. Bill (arrive) here three days ago.
4. Bill (be, not) here since the 22nd.

5. Try not to be absent from class again for the rest of the term. You (miss, already) too many classes. You (miss) two classes just last week.
6. So far this week, I (have) two tests and a quiz.
7. Alex is an artist. He (draw) many beautiful pictures in his lifetime. Last week he (draw) a beautiful mountain scene.
8. Jack really needs to get in touch with you. Since this morning, he (call) here four times trying to reach you. He (call) at 9:10, 10:25, 12:15, and 1:45.
9. Last January, I (see) snow for the first time in my life.
10. Fatima (see, never) snow in her entire lifetime.

Ex.5 Put the verb into the correct form (Present Perfect / Present Perfect Continuous / Past Simple)

1. They _____ (to be) our neighbours for five years from 1999 till 2004.
2. How _____ (your first family party, to go)? — I'm afraid it _____ (to be) a bit boring. But we _____ (to improve) since then.
3. He _____ (to study) medicine for three years. Then he _____ (to give) it up and _____ (to leave) for India. Nobody _____ (to hear) from him ever since.
4. He _____ (to tell) stories all evening. — Do you think he's going to tell more? — Oh, sure, he seems to know no end of them.
5. I _____ (to see) Nick before classes today.
6. She _____ (to travel) to many countries since she _____ (to get) this new job.
7. We _____ (not, to meet) for the last two weeks.
8. I _____ (just, to pass) the most difficult exam in my life. — How _____ (you, to prepare) for it?
9. He _____ (to be) my best student.
10. I _____ (to know) this poem long ago. But I can't remember it now.

Ex.6 used to + Infinitive or Past Simple.

1. When I was a child, I _____ (play) in the garden every day.
2. Last year, we _____ (visit) Paris in the summer.
3. She _____ (have) long hair, but now she has short hair.
4. Two days ago, he _____ (buy) a new laptop.
5. We _____ (go) to the same café every weekend.
6. I _____ (see) a great movie yesterday.
7. My parents _____ (live) in a small town before they moved to the city.

8. She _____ (meet) her best friend at school last week.
9. He _____ (not / enjoy) vegetables when he was young.
10. Yesterday, I _____ (wake) up very late.

Ex.7 Correct the mistakes where necessary.

1. I have seen him yesterday at the supermarket.
2. She don't like the movie last night.
3. Did you went to the party on Saturday?
4. Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child?
5. I've bought a new car. You must come and see it.
6. I've bought a new car last week.
7. Where have you been yesterday evening?
8. Maria has left school in 1999.
9. I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?
10. 'Have you ever been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.'
11. When has this bridge been built?
12. Have you eaten breakfast this morning?
13. They was very tired after the long journey yesterday.
14. Did she finished her report that day?
15. I didn't saw him at the meeting yesterday.
16. We has visited the museum on Friday.
17. I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today.

Ex.8 Translate into English

1. Сегодня я проконсультировалась у другого врача. — И что он тебе посоветовал? 2. Я уже был на этой экскурсии два года назад. 3. Мы раньше ходили в школу пешком каждый день. 4. Кто изобрел компьютер? 5. Я недавно вернулась домой. — Ты уже поужинала? 6. О чем ты написала в сочинении? 7. В последние несколько дней об этом происшествии больше не было новостей. 8. Мы знаем друг друга давно. — А когда вы познакомились? 9. Когда я был ребёнком, я часто катался на велосипеде по улице. 10. Ты когда-нибудь была за границей? — Да, много раз. В прошлом году мы с мужем ездили в Италию. 11. Ты знаешь, сколько сражений выиграл Наполеон? 12. Он раньше много путешествовал.

Unit 6. The Past Continuous Tense

was / were + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие, которое происходило в определённый момент в прошлом	<i>At 7 p.m. yesterday, I was watching a movie. When my Mum came, I was watching a movie.</i>	<i>Вчера, в 7 часов вечера, я смотрел фильм. Когда пришла моя мама, я смотрела фильм.</i>
2) действие, которое происходило в указанный период времени в прошлом	<i>Yesterday, from 5 to 7 p.m., I was watching a movie.</i>	<i>Вчера, с 5 до 7 часов вечера, я смотрел фильм.</i>
3) действие, которое происходило в тот момент, когда другое действие прервало его	<i>He was walking down the street, when he met an old friend.</i>	<i>Он шел по улице, когда встретил своего старого друга.</i>
4) два и более одновременных действия	<i>While I was cooking, he was reading a book.</i>	<i>Пока я готовила, он читал книгу.</i>
5) описание обстановки, на фоне которой происходило действие в прошлом	<i>One beautiful autumn afternoon, Ben was strolling down a quiet country lane. The birds were singing and the leaves were rustling in the breeze.</i>	<i>В один прекрасный осенний день, Бен шёл неспешно по тихой сельской дорожке. Пели птицы, а листья шелестели на ветру.</i>
6) повторяющееся раздражающее действие в прошлом (обычно с <i>always, constantly</i>)	<i>He was always losing his keys! She was constantly talking during the meeting.</i>	<i>Он всегда терял свои ключи! Она постоянно говорила во время встречи.</i>

**Сравнение Present Perfect Continuous —
Past Simple — Past Continuous**

<i>Present Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Past Simple</i>	<i>Past Continuous</i>
Подчеркивает длительность завершенного действия, результат (или последствия) которого мы наблюдаем или имеет значение в настоящем.	Констатирует факт работы в прошлом, без акцента на процесс или длительность.	Подчеркивает процесс или длительность действия в определенный момент (период времени) в прошлом.
<i>I'm tired. I have been working hard all day.</i>	<i>I worked for this company in 1996.</i>	<i>I was working hard all day yesterday.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the chart:

was looking was snowing	was wearing was working	wasn't listening were sitting	weren't looking were you going
----------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

1. Today Helen is wearing a skirt. Yesterday she **was wearing** trousers.
2. 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I _____
_____.'
3. We _____ at the back of the theatre. We couldn't hear
very well.
4. This time last year Steve _____ on
a farm.
5. They didn't see me. They _____ in my
direction.
6. The weather was bad. It was very cold and _____
it.
7. I saw you in your car. Where _____
_____?
8. I saw Kate a few minutes ago. She _____
for you.

Ex.2 Make sentences using Past Continuous

1. at this time yesterday — I, to walk in the park _____
_____.
2. at 8 yesterday morning — my mother, to make breakfast _____
_____.
3. at 1 o'clock yesterday — my friends, to have classes, at school _____
_____.
4. at 9 o'clock last night — my Dad, not to watch the news program on TV.
He was sleeping. _____.
5. from 3 till 5 on Sunday — I, to prepare homework _____
_____.
6. from 10 till 11 on Saturday — my Mum and I, to walk in the park. We, to
clean the flat _____.
7. at this time on Tuesday — I, to play, with my younger brother (sister)
_____.

Ex.3 Put the verb in brackets into the Past Continuous Tense.

1. The street was absolutely empty and we _____ (to drive) very fast.
2. Did you really hear what they _____ (to talk) about? — I tell you it was
about some robbery!
3. She was disgusting to look at! — But why! Isn't she pretty? — It wasn't
that! She _____ (always, to chew) gum! I find it extremely unpleasant.
Don't you?
4. _____ (the music, to play) all the time from 7 till 9 in the evening?
5. When we arrived at the seaside the weather was disappointing at first. A
strong wind _____ (to blow), the sky was cloudy and it _____ (to drizzle). But
the next day the sun came out.
6. It sounds strange but I can't remember what I _____ (to do) at this time two
days ago. — Perhaps you _____ (to sleep)?
7. It seems to me everybody _____ (really, to enjoy) the party when the awful
news about that accident came.

Ex.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. He (to hurt) his leg when he (to fall) off the ladder.
2. I (to see) that she (to enjoy) the concert. She (to sit, to smile).
3. Why (you, not, to open) the door at once? — Sorry, I (not, to hear) the bell.

4. I (to break) the plate while I (to do) the washing-up.
5. At two o'clock this afternoon I (to have) lunch that's why you (not, to get) me on the phone.
6. I (to find) that old photo when I (to look) through the album.
7. I (to know) for sure what (to happen) in the next room at that moment.
8. They (to discuss) the situation for about an hour at yesterday's meeting.
9. When I (to arrive) the party (to be) in full swing. Someone (to play) the piano and the guests (to dance). Nobody (to notice) me come in.
10. I (to ask) her something but she (not, to answer) as she (to taste) some dish.

Ex.5 Correct the mistakes where it is necessary.

1. While I was walking home yesterday, it suddenly starts to rain heavily.
2. She didn't went to the party because she was working that day.
3. The children was running around the park, and their parents talked about weekend plans.
4. I was reading a book when my phone ringed.
5. Were you seeing what happened on the street when the accident occurred?
6. They was playing football, while their coach gave instructions from the side.
7. He didn't watched TV, because he was studying for the exam all evening.
8. While we were having dinner, the neighbors started a loud argument.
9. Did she was reading the newspaper when you called her?

Ex.6 Match the sentences to the correct description.

- a) An action that was happening at a specific moment in the past
- b) An action that was happening during a specified period of time in the past
- c) An action that was happening when another action interrupted it
- d) Two or more simultaneous actions
- e) A description of the background or setting in the past
- f) A repeated annoying action in the past

1. She was cooking dinner when her friends arrived.
2. At 7 p.m. yesterday, I was having dinner.
3. Last week, we were working on the new project every afternoon.
4. My neighbour was constantly playing loud music late at night.
5. She was reading a book at 10 o'clock last night.

6. The sun was setting, and the waves were crashing against the rocks.
7. I was taking a shower when the phone rang.
8. During the summer holidays, the children were playing outside all day.
9. While I was reading, my brother was watching TV in the living room.
10. One autumn afternoon, Ben was strolling down a quiet country lane. The birds were singing and the leaves were rustling in the breeze.
11. He was always complaining about the weather.
12. They were studying in the library while their friends were playing football outside.

Ex.7 Translate into English.

1. Неужели никто ничего не заметил? — Нет, все смотрели телевизор и ничего подозрительного не слышали. 2. Когда зазвонил будильник, он его выключил и встал. 3. Что вы делали вчера в 5 часов? — У меня было свидание. 4. Я обдумывал наш план, когда мне в голову пришла прекрасная идея. 5. Когда мы слушали новости, мы еще не знали, что они значат. 6. Я не понимал ни слова. Они говорили очень быстро. 7. Пока он выступал, все его внимательно слушали. 8. В коридоре было очень шумно. Соседи что-то праздновали. 9. Когда он вернулся, мы подробно обсудили план. 10. Он говорил по телефону минуты три, затем передал трубку мне. 11. Она постоянно смотрела в зеркало! Это действовало мне на нервы. 12. Холодало, и мы вернулись в город.

Unit 7. The Past Perfect Tense

had + V-ed/3

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие, которое произошло (или не произошло) до другого действия в прошлом. При этом то действие, которое (не) произошло раньше, выражается в Past Perfect, а случившееся позже — в Past Simple.	<i>What had Mary done before her husband came home? — She had cooked dinner, but she hadn't laid the table.</i>	<i>Что сделала Мэри до того, как её муж пришёл с работы? — Она приготовила ужин, но не накрыла на стол.</i>
2) действие, которое произошло до указанного момента в прошлом	<i>She had watered all the flowers by five o'clock in the afternoon.</i>	<i>Она полила все цветы до 5 часов дня.</i>
3) действие, которое уже закончилось и результат этого действия наблюдался в прошлом	<i>He was happy. He had signed an important contract.</i>	<i>Он был счастлив. Он подписал важный контракт. (Результат: он был счастлив, т.к. до этого он подписал контракт).</i>

Примечания:

- Past Perfect часто употребляется со словами и оборотами, характерными для Present Perfect: *ever, never, just, for, since, lately*, и т.д. Однако, в отличие от Present Perfect, Past Perfect употребляется только в контексте прошедшего времени.

They were very close friends. They had known each other for ages.

She wanted to go to France. She had never been there before.

- Если в предложении речь идет не о действии, а о состоянии, наступившем к определенному моменту в прошлом, то употребляется Past Indefinite.

Сравните:

They didn't know anything by that time yet. = Они еще ничего не знали к тому времени (Past Simple).

They hadn't found anything out by that time yet. = Они еще ничего не узнали к тому времени (Past Perfect).

Но если указано, сколько длится это состояние к определенному моменту в прошлом, обязательно употребление Past Perfect.

Сравните:

When I arrived Nick was already there. = *Когда я приехал, Ник уже был там (Past Simple).*

When I arrived Nick had been there for about an hour. = *Когда я приехал, Ник был там уже около часа (Past Perfect).*

- Если действия представлены в их реальной последовательности, то употребляется Past Indefinite.

Сравните:

*He lost the key and **couldn't get** into the house.* = *Он потерял ключ и не мог попасть домой (Past Simple).*

*He **couldn't get** into the house because he **had lost** the key.* = *Он не мог попасть домой, потому что потерял ключ (Past Perfect).*

- В сложных предложениях с союзами **hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than** в главном предложении употребляется Past Perfect, а в придаточном Past Indefinite. Обратите внимание на порядок слов.

*I **had hardly finished** the task when they **gave** me another one.* = *Hardly had I finished the task when they **gave** me another one.* = *Едва я закончил (не успел я закончить) задание, как мне дали еще одно.*

- Обратите внимание на перевод следующих предложений:

*She **stopped and looked** at the shop window.* = *Она остановилась и посмотрела на витрину (Past Simple, выражает последовательность действий).*

*She **had just left** the house and **was walking** down the street when it **started** to rain.* = *Она только что вышла из дома и шла по улице, когда начался дождь. (1-е действие («вышла из дома») произошло до описываемого момента («шла по улице»), во время которого случилось еще одно событие — «начался дождь»).*

Сравнение Past Perfect — Past Continuous — Past Simple

<i>Past Perfect</i>	<i>Past Continuous</i>	<i>Past Simple</i>
Употребляется для выражения действия, которое произошло раньше другого действия в прошлом. <i>They had eaten dinner when their friends came</i>	Употребляется для выражения действия, продолжавшегося в прошлом в момент, когда произошло другое действие. <i>They were eating dinner when their friends came.</i>	Употребляется для выражения действий, произошедших непосредственно одно за другим в прошлом. <i>They ate dinner; phoned their friends and went out to meet them.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Put the verb in brackets into the Past Perfect Tense.

1. Frank was in the Tretyakov Gallery last Sunday. He _____ (never, to be) there before.
2. She entered the room, greeted the guests, and introduced the friend she _____ (to bring).
3. By 6 o'clock they _____ (not, to announce) the results yet.
4. He _____ (to try) getting her on the phone since early morning but she was out.
5. By the time he was 15 he _____ (to break) his arm three times.
6. She _____ (to do) all the housework before the children returned from school.
7. He had dinner and took out the book he _____ (to buy) on his way home.
8. When the police arrived the criminal _____ (already, to escape).
9. She _____ (to be) very busy lately so she nearly forgot about our arrangement.
10. We _____ (to discuss) every detail of the plan by evening.

Ex.2 Read the situations and write sentences using the words in brackets.

1. There was a picture lying on the floor.
(It / fall / off the wall) **It had fallen off the wall** _____.
2. The people sitting next to you on the plane were nervous. It was their first flight.
(They / not / fly / before) **They hadn't flown before** _____.
3. You went back to your home town recently after many years. It wasn't the same as before.
(It / change / a lot) It _____.
4. Somebody sang a song. You didn't know it.
(I / not / hear / it / before) I _____.
5. I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.
(She / arrange / to do something else) _____.
6. You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late.
(The film / already / start) _____.
7. Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.
(We / not / be / there / before) We _____.

Ex.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).

1. Paul wasn't at the party when I arrived. ____ **He had gone** ____ (He / go) **home**.
2. I felt very tired when I got home, so _____ (I / go) straight to bed.
3. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody _____ (go) to bed.
4. Mark travels a lot. When I first met him, _____ (he / already / travel) round the world.
5. Sorry I'm late. The car _____ (break) down on my way here.
6. We were driving along the road when _____ (we / see) a car which _____ (break) down, so _____ (we / stop) to help.

Ex.4 Translate into English.

1. К концу месяца они истратили все деньги. 2. К 28-ми годам она сделала прекрасную карьеру. 3. Когда вернулись родители, друзья Майка уже ушли. 4. Ребенку было очень интересно. Он никогда раньше не был в зоопарке. 5. Я не ожидала, что он придет вовремя. Он уже дважды опаздывал. 6. Это был как раз тот подарок, который я давно хотела получить. 7. К тому времени, как начался дождь, они уже починили машину. 8. Он приехал на станцию, купил билет и позвонил жене, как обещал.

Ex.5 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (had done), past simple (did) or past continuous (was/were doing).

1. She _____ (not, to learn) the material well enough and _____ (to get) a bad mark at the exam.
2. She _____ (to get) a bad mark at the exam because she _____ (not, to learn) the material well enough.
3. I _____ (to know) Sam for about two years when he _____ (to get) married.
4. I _____ (already, to know) Sam and Rachel when they _____ (to get) married.
5. We _____ (to give) the children their presents and they _____ (to open) the parcels at once.
6. We _____ (hardly, to exchange) our New Year presents when the first guests _____ (to arrive).
7. I _____ (to see) a fight when I _____ (to walk) in the park the other day.

8. She ____ (to forget) a few things when she ____ (to make) a list, so she ____ (not, to buy) some of the things she ____ (to need).
9. She ____ (to hurt) her leg when she ____ (to get) off the bus. Fortunately, she ____ (not, to break) it.
10. By the time the police ____ (to catch) the robbers they no longer ____ (to have) the money they ____ (to steal).

Ex.6 Correct the mistakes where it is necessary.

1. It was the first time they travelled by ship.
2. Hardly I had turned around when the man disappeared.
3. When I came all the documents were ready.
4. She burnt her tongue when she tasted the soup.
5. By the time the doctor came the patient had already been dead.
6. He finished his book by December last year.
7. When Sue came into the room the baby was awake for a quarter of an hour. He was quietly playing with his toys.
8. She was interested in nothing else but her success. She was constantly speaking about it!
9. She had forgotten her friend's address and couldn't find the house.
10. She had worked on her computer when the light went out.

Ex.7 Translate into English.

1. Когда пришла Мария, мы пили чай. 2. Когда Мария ушла, мы всё ещё пили чай. 3. Когда пришла Мария, мы уже попили чай. 4. Когда пришла Мария, мы обсудили новости и попили чаю. 5. Когда пришла Мария, мы уже обсудили новости и пили чай. 6. Не успели мы обсудить новости, как пришла Мария. 7. Что вы обсуждали, когда пришла Мария? 8. Вы что-то уже обсудили к тому времени, как пришла Мария? 9. Она была очень рада, так как закончила проект. 10. Я знала Марию лет пять, когда познакомилась с ее сестрой.

Unit 8. Past Perfect Continuous

had been + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие, которое началось, продолжалось и закончилось до другого действия в прошлом В этом значении часто употребляется с <i>lately, since, for</i> .	<i>They had been looking for a new house for six months before they found one they liked.</i>	Они искали новый дом на протяжении шести месяцев, прежде чем нашли тот, который им понравился.
2) длительное действие, которое завершилось к определенному моменту времени в прошлом	<i>By the time the movie started, I had been reading the book for two hours.</i>	К тому времени, когда начался фильм, я читал книгу на протяжении двух часов
3) действие, которое длилось какое-то время в прошлом и результат этого действия также наблюдался в прошлом	<i>Outside everything was in deep snow. It had been snowing hard all night.</i>	На улице все было в снегу. Сильный снег шёл всю ночь.

Примечание:

Глаголы, не имеющие форм Continuous, не употребляются в Past Perfect Continuous. В указанных значениях они образуют Past Perfect.

Сравнение Past Perfect Continuous — Past Continuous — Present Perfect Continuous

<i>Past Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Past Continuous</i>	<i>Present Perfect Continuous</i>
Подчеркивает длительность действия, которое началось в прошлом и продолжалось до другого прошлого события или момента времени. <i>I was tired. It was time for the rest. I had been studying for two hours by the time she arrived.</i>	Подчеркивает процесс, который происходил в конкретный момент времени в прошлом. <i>I was studying when she arrived.</i>	Подчеркивает длительность действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего момента или только что завершившегося. Акцент делается на продолжительности и результате действия. <i>I'm tired. It's time for the rest. I have been studying for two hours.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Read the situations and make sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Tom was very tired when he got home.
(He / work / hard all day) _____ **He had been working hard all day** _____.
2. The children came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
(They / play / football) _____.
3. I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.
(I / look / forward to it) _____.
4. Anna woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.
(She / have / a bad dream) _____.
5. When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
(He / watch / a film) _____.
6. The people waiting at the bus stop were getting impatient. The bus was very late.
(They / wait / a long time) _____.

Ex.2 Make complex sentences using the information.

They worried about their children all night long. They looked very nervous.
→ **They looked very nervous because they had been worrying about their children all night long.**

1. We drove for two hours. The accident happened.
..... (when)
2. The baby cried for almost an hour. He finally fell asleep.
..... (after)
3. The man suddenly fell down. He walked in front of me all the way.
..... (who)
4. Ann took the medicine for several weeks. She really felt better.
..... (before)
5. There was a sweet smell in the room. She cooked biscuits all morning.
..... (because)

Ex.3 Choose the correct variant

1. It was noisy next door last night. Our neighbours **were having / had been having** a party.
2. At the end of our journey we were extremely tired. **We were travelling / We'd been travelling** for more than 24 hours.
3. James was on his hands and knees on the floor. **He was looking / He'd been looking** for his contact lens.
4. Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. **She was running / She'd been running**.
5. John and I went for a walk. **He was walking / He'd been walking** very fast and I had difficulty keeping up with him.
6. I was sad when I sold my car. **I've had it / I'd had it** for a very long time.
7. I was sad when my local cafe closed. **I was going / I'd been going** there for many years.
8. I'm running a marathon next month. **I've been training / I'd been training** for it every day.
9. I had arranged to meet Kate, but I was late. When I finally arrived, she **was waiting / she'd been waiting** for me. She was annoyed because **she was waiting / she'd been waiting** such a long time.
10. Joe and I work for the same company. He joined the company before me. When I started a few years ago, **he was already working / he'd already been working** there.

Ex.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (had done) or past perfect continuous (had been doing).

1. The program she ____ (to watch) for some time suddenly stopped.
2. How long ____ (the Jonsons, to look) for the house before they found the one they really liked?
3. Pete ____ (not, to decide) anything by Wednesday though we ____ (to discuss) the situation long enough.
4. We met at the Ritz. She ____ (to work) there since the beginning of the year.
5. I ____ (to call) Nick several times before I finally got through.
6. The child's curiosity annoyed me. He ____ (to ask) me questions all day! He ____ (to ask) me ten questions just for the last half an hour.
7. The man who ____ (to follow) me all the way turned out to be a policeman.
8. The boy was exhausted. He ____ (not, to eat) for two days.

9. By the time the police found the burglar he _____ (to hide) in the attic for three weeks.
10. The dress she _____ (to put on) looked wonderful.

Ex.5 Supply the Present Perfect Continuous or the Past Perfect Continuous.

1. I was tired. I (*have been digging / had been digging*) all day.
2. I (*have been standing / had been standing*) here since 6 o'clock.
3. She (*has been studying / had been studying*) English for five years before she visited Canada.
4. They (*have been ringing / had been ringing*) me about it every day for the past week.
5. I knew you (*have been painting / had been painting*). — How did you know? — Your hair was covered with paint!
6. Stop talking, please! You (*have been talking / had been talking*) all evening!

Ex.6 Translate into English.

1. Машина уже ждала вас, когда прибыл поезд? 2. Дети выглядели бодрыми. Они все утро катались на лыжах. 3. Она устала, так как много занималась с утра. Она выучила половину необходимого материала. 4. Мы репетировали спектакль примерно месяц, когда Джек заболел. — И сколько вы искали другого актера? — Всего несколько дней. 5. К тому времени, как прибыли пожарные, дом сгорел. 6. Они красили дом два часа, когда мы приехали помочь им. 7. Когда они красили дом, пошел дождь. 8. Как долго вы искали дом до того, как нашли этот? 9. Сколько времени ты готовила все эти блюда до того, как пришли гости?

REVISION
(Past Tenses)

Ex.1 Supply the Past Simple or Past Perfect. We often introduce the past perfect with conjunctions like *when, after, as soon as, by the time that*. We use adverbs like *already, ever, never ... before*

1. They (locked / had locked) the gate before I (got / had got) there.
2. By the time we (arrived / had arrived), the party (finished / had finished).
3. I (rang / had rung) the shop as soon as I (checked / had checked) the contents of the box.

4. After we (discussed / had discussed) it on the phone, I (wrote / had written) him a letter about it.
5. We (had / had had) a good rest when our guests all (left / had left).
6. When she (rang / had rung) the office this morning, Jim (already went out / had already gone out).
7. Before we (took / had taken) Tim to the theatre, he (never saw / had never seen) a stage play before.

Ex.2 Supply the Past Perfect or the Past Perfect Continuous. Remember that the past perfect progressive means uncompleted action, and the past perfect — completed action.

1. We (cook) all day for the party that evening and by 8 o'clock we still weren't ready.
2. John (prepare) a beautiful meal for his guests and they all enjoyed it.
3. I knew she (do) the washing because the machine was still working when I got in.
4. I knew she (do) the washing because when I got in she was ready to go out.
5. By 10 o'clock the children (do) their homework and were ready to go to bed.

Ex.3 Underline the correct form.

1. When Dora **went / had gone** to pay for the petrol, she **realized / was realizing** that she **lost / had lost** her credit card.
2. While I **was waiting / had waited** for my meal to arrive, I **saw / was seeing** that the two men who had followed me into the restaurant **were staring / had been staring** at me from a nearby table.
3. When I **heard / was hearing** the noise at the window, I **knew / had known** that someone **tried / was trying** to break into the house.
4. Maria **didn't remember / wasn't remembering** anything about the accident, except that she **didn't drive / had not been driving** too fast and in fact **had almost stopped / was almost stopping** before she reached the crossroads.
5. By the time the fire engines **arrived / was arriving** at the cottage, Tom and his neighbours **already put out / had already put out** the fire and **were carrying / had been carrying** furniture out of the blackened building.
6. 'What **did you do / were you doing** in the High Street at that time of night, and why **did you run away / had you run away** when the officer **told / was telling** you to stop?' asked the Lawyer.

7. While Sally *ainted / was painting* the ceiling, she *fell off / was falling off* the ladder but luckily she *didn't break / wasn't breaking* any bones.
8. Our taxi to the airport *didn't turn up / wasn't turning up* on time, and so by the time we *got / were getting* to the check-in desk, the flight *already closed / had already closed*.
9. Alice could see that the tall boy *had / was having* difficulty making himself understood, but she *decided / was deciding* not to help him.

Ex.4 Choose the correct form.

1. I was born in Africa _____ 1970.
A) on B) at C) in D) last
2. I _____ a friend while I _____ the shopping
A) was meeting / did B) met / was doing C) meet / do D) met / did
3. I found a flat on my own _____ last year.
A) at B) for C) — D) on
4. While the waiter _____ up the broken plates, he _____ his finger.
A) picked / was cutting B) was picking / cut C) picked / cut D) picked / had cut
5. Last week the police _____ Alan in his car because he _____ over eighty miles an hour.
A) were stopping / was driving B) had stopped / drove C) stopped / was driving D) was stopping / driven
6. Lisa _____ me a lift because I _____ the bus.
A) gave / missed B) have given / have missed C) gave / had missed D) had gave / missed
7. He evidently _____ his shoes for a very long time. They were worn-out.
A) were wearing B) are wearing C) had been wearing D) was wearing E) had been worn
8. They _____ on their book for two years before they sent it to publish.
A) worked B) have worked C) had worked D) had been working E) work

9. We ___ in London for ten years before we went to France.
A) were living B) have lived C) was living D) had been living
10. _____ a good time last night?
A) Did you have B) Were you having C) Had you have D) Had you been having
11. After they _____ their work, they ___ home.
A) had finished / went B) finished / went C) had finished / had gone
D) finished / had gone
12. We ___ for six hours when at last we reached the top of the mountain.
A) had climbed B) climbed C) had been climbing D) were climbing

Ex.5 Discuss in pairs the meaning of the verb forms and answer the questions about the pairs of sentences

1. a) Dan was leaving the room when I walked in.
b) Sam had left the room when I walked in.

Question: *Who did I run into when I walked into the room?*

Answer: *Dan.*

2. a) When the rain stopped, Gloria was riding her bicycle to work.
b) When the rain stopped, Paul rode his bicycle to work.

Question: Who got wet on the way to work?

3. a) Ken went to the store because he was running out of food.
b) Ann went to the store because she had run out of food.

Question: Who is better at planning ahead?

4. a) Vs. Lincoln taught at this school for nine years.
b) Mr. Sanchez has taught at this school for nine years.

Question: Who is teaching at this school now?

5. a) Alice was walking to the door when the doorbell rang.
b) George walked to the door when the doorbell rang.

Question: Who had been expecting the doorbell to ring?

6. a) When I got there, Marie had eaten.

b) When I got there, Joe was eating.

Question: Who was still hungry when I got there?

7. a) Jane put some lotion on her face because she had been lying in the sun.

b) Sue put some lotion on her face because she was lying in the sun.

Question: Who put lotion on her face after she finished sunbathing?

8. a) Donna lived in Chicago for five years.

b) Carlos has been living in Chicago for five years.

Question: Who still lives in Chicago?

9. a) I looked across the street. Mr. Fox was waving at me.

b) I looked across the street. Mrs. Cook waved me.

Question: Who began to wave at me before I looked across the street?

Ex.6 Correct the mistakes.

1. When I was arriving at the party, everyone danced.

2. I was happy to meet John. I didn't see him since 2006.

3. She was cooking dinner when the guests had arrived.

4. We were living in London before we had moved to Manchester.

5. He had been playing football yesterday when it rained.

6. By the time we arrived, the film was already started.

7. While I painted the room, my sister was cleaned the kitchen.

8. They were being married for ten years before they divorced.

9. I hadn't finished my homework, so I was staying up very late.

10. The teacher was explaining the rule when the bell had rung.

Ex.7 Translate into English.

1. Дети сделали уроки и играли. Они играли уже около двух часов. 2. Она прочла много статей, прежде чем нашла подходящую. 3. Что вы обсуждали, когда пришёл Ник? 4. Мы везде ищем котенка с тех самых пор, как он пропал. 5. Миссис Грейс сильно поправилась, так как слишком много ела в последние несколько дней. 6. Вы что-то уже обсудили к тому времени, как она пришла? 7. Я не знаю, что в это время делала моя жена. Ее не было дома. 8. Катя посадила цветок и поставила его на подоконник. На следующий день он погиб, так как она забыла его полить. 9. Это самое трудное решение, которое я когда-либо принимала. 10. Раньше я часто его здесь видела.

Unit 9. The Future Simple Tense

В английском языке существует несколько способов говорить о будущем: **Future Simple, Present Simple, Present Continuous, выражение be going to do smth.**

shall / will + V

Вспомогательный глагол **shall** употребляется только с местоимениями I и we. Однако в современном языке наблюдается тенденция употребления **will** для всех лиц, тем более, что разница исчезает в сокращенных формах: I'll, we'll, you'll, she'll, they'll и т. д.

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) прогнозирование событий в будущем на основе мнения или предположения (при этом обычно используются глаголы <i>think</i> (думаю), <i>expect</i> , <i>believe</i> (полагаю), <i>be sure</i> (уверен(а)), <i>be afraid</i> (боюсь, что ...), наречия вероятности свершения событий <i>probably</i> (вероятно), <i>perhaps</i> (возможно), <i>certainly</i> (определенно)	<p><i>I am afraid we shall not (shan't) be on time for the meeting.</i></p> <p><i>I think he will fix the bike tomorrow.</i></p> <p><i>She will probably come soon.</i></p>	<p><i>Боюсь, мы не сможем быть вовремя на встрече.</i></p> <p><i>Я думаю, он отремонтирует велосипед завтра.</i></p> <p><i>Она, вероятно, скоро придет.</i></p>
2) принятые в момент речи спонтанные решения	<p><i>"There is no milk in the fridge." — "I'll go to buy it".</i></p>	<p><i>«В холодильнике нет молока». — «Я схожу куплю».</i></p>
3) обещания (обычно с глаголами <i>promise</i> (обещать), <i>swear</i> (клянусь), <i>guarantee</i> (гарантирую)	<p><i>I promise I shall take care of your cat.</i></p>	<p><i>Я обещаю, что позабочусь о твоём котё.</i></p>
4) предупреждения или угрозы	<p><i>If you don't leave, I'll call the police. Stop there or I'll shoot.</i></p>	<p><i>Если ты не уйдёшь, я вызову полицию. Стойте на месте, или я буду стрелять.</i></p>
5) выражения просьб или предложений что-то сделать	<p><i>Will you help me?</i></p> <p><i>Shall we take a coffee break?</i></p>	<p><i>Ты сможешь мне? (просьба)</i></p> <p><i>Прервемся на кофе? (предложение что-то сделать)</i></p>

6) события в будущем, которые нельзя изменить	<i>The temperature will reach 40° C tomorrow. Bob will turn 40 next week.</i>	<i>Температура завтра достигнет 40° С. На следующей неделе Бобу исполнится 40 лет.</i>
---	---	--

Примечания:

- Используется **Present Simple**, а не будущее время (Future Simple) после слов и выражений *while* (в то время, как), *before* (до), *after* (после), *until* (пока не) \ *till* (пока, до), *as* (так как), *unless* (пока не), *when* (когда), *whenever* (когда бы ни), *if* (если), *as soon as* (как только), *as long as* (так долго, как), *by the time* (к тому времени, как), *in case* (в случае), *on condition that* (при условии, что)
*Phone me **as soon as** you come back.* = Позвони мне, как только ты вернешься.

- Future Simple** не используется с **when** и **if**, если они являются частью придаточных предложений времени (с *when*) и условия (с *if*). В этом случае используется Present Simple.

When I come back, I will phone you. = Когда я вернусь, я позвоню тебе.

If you come back earlier, we will go to the cinema. = Если ты вернешься пораньше, мы пойдем в кино.

- Future Simple** используется, если «**when**» или «**if**» являются частью определенного (уточняющего) придаточного предложения.

*I don't know **when they will arrive**.* — Я не знаю (Чего я не знаю?), когда они придут.

*I don't know **if he will agree**.* — Я не знаю (Что я не знаю?), согласится ли он.

Future Simple используется с «**When**» только в том случае, если это вопросительное слово, а не часть придаточного предложения времени.

When will the performance start? = Когда же начнется представление?

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Put the verbs in brackets into Future Simple.

- Don't worry, he ____ (not, to refuse) to lend you the money.
- They ____ (to celebrate) the second anniversary of their wedding next month.
- ____ (he, to show) us the sights of the town right now?
- The actors are very good. I'm sure the performance ____ (to be) a great success.
- I ____ (never, to forget) what you did to me.
- ____ (there, to be) any party after the official ceremony?

Ex.2 Put the verbs in brackets into Future Simple or Present Simple.

1. I don't think she ____ (to agree) to help us until she ____ (to know) all the details of the plan.
2. I hope he ____ (not, recognize) me if I ____ (to wear) a wig.
3. I'm sure there ____ (to be) a heated discussion after the students ____ (to see) the film.
4. When you ____ (to apologize) to her you ____ (to feel) much better.
5. I don't know when Mrs. Smith ____ (to recover).
6. I ____ (to lay) the table while you ____ (to dress) for the party.
7. I'm not sure if this time ____ (to be) convenient for him.
8. I ____ (not, to continue) the conversation unless you ____ (to calm down).
9. I ____ (to return) you the book as soon as I ____ (to finish) it.
10. Call me at any time in case you ____ (to have) any problems.

Ex.3 Choose the correct reason for using Future Simple.

Prediction based on opinion or assumption	Spontaneous decision	Promises	Requests or offers	Future events that cannot be changed	Warnings or threats
---	----------------------	----------	--------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------

1. I think it'll start raining when we leave the house.
2. Oh, the phone is ringing — I'll answer it!
3. Will you open the window, please? It's really hot in here.
4. Touch that button again and I'll report you to the manager.
5. Don't worry, I'll never tell anyone your secret.
6. You look tired. I'll make you some tea.
7. Christmas will fall on a Thursday next year.
8. She'll probably call you as soon as she gets the news.
9. If you don't stop shouting, I'll leave the room.
10. I promise I'll help you with your project when I finish mine.
11. Shall we go for a walk when the rain stops?
12. The sun will rise at 6:45 tomorrow morning.

Ex.4 Translate into English.

1. Он не сдаст экзамен, если ты не поможешь ему подготовиться. 2. Как только гости придут, мы им объявим новость. 3. Когда вы узнаете результаты? — Когда преподаватель проверит наши работы. 4. Интересно, присоединится ли к нам Джон, когда мы расскажем ему о поездке. 5. Прежде чем ребенок ляжет спать, мама его искупает. 6. В случае, если его не будет дома, я зайду к нему позже. 7. Я понятия не имею, когда состоится следующее собрание. 8. После того как закончится фильм, мы пойдем гулять. 9. Если погода будет хорошая, мы пойдем на пляж. 10. Я не буду ничего покупать, пока не накоплю немного денег. 11. Он говорит, что когда вернется из отпуска, он организует вечеринку. 12. Я дам тебе знать, как только все будет готово.

be (am / is / are) going + V

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) планы, намерения, амбиции	<i>I'm going to take an exam in June.</i> <i>I am not going to tell her about my plans.</i> <i>He studies medicine.</i> <i>He is going to become a doctor.</i>	<i>Я собираюсь (планирую) сдать экзамен в июне.</i> <i>Я не намерен рассказывать ей о своих планах.</i> <i>Он изучает медицину. Он собирается стать врачом.</i>
2) будущее событие, которое уже запланировано или подготовлено	<i>We are going to visit our grandparents this weekend.</i>	<i>Мы собираемся навестить бабушку и дедушку в эти выходные.</i>
3) прогнозирование будущего, основанного на очевидных фактах (событие, которое вот-вот произойдет или уже начинает происходить; есть очевидные признаки того, что что-то произойдет)	<i>Look at those dark clouds! It is going to rain.</i> <i>Look at that man! He is going to fall any second now!</i>	<i>Посмотри на эти темные тучи! Скоро (Вот-вот) пойдет дождь.</i> <i>Посмотри на этого мужчину! Он вот-вот упадет в любую секунду!</i>

Примечания:

Be going to не используется с глаголами, которые выражают движение (*go, come*). В этом случае The Present Continuous Tense используется.
Sam is going to the supermarket in a few minutes. — *Сэм пойдёт в супермаркет через несколько минут.*

**Сравнение Present Simple — Present Continuous —
Future Simple — be going to**

Present Simple	Present Continuous	Future Simple	be going to
Будущее событие согласно расписанию <i>The meeting starts at 5 p.m. today.</i>	Запланированное действие в будущем <i>I am meeting my friends at the cinema today.</i>	Прогнозирование событий в будущем на основе предположения <i>I'm sure I will arrive on time for the meeting with my friends at the cinema.</i>	Запланированное действие в будущем <i>We are going to meet this weekend.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or (be) going to.

1. a: Why are you turning on the TV?
b: ***I'm going to watch the news.*** (I / watch)
2. a: I forgot my wallet. I don't have any money.
b: Not to worry. _____ you some. (***I / lend***)
3. a: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
b: _____ the car. (***I / wash***)
4. a: I don't know how to use the washing machine.
b: It's easy. _____ you. (***I / show***)
5. a: I've decided to paint this room.
b: That's nice. What colour _____ it? (***you / paint***)
6. a: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
b: Yes, _____ some things for dinner tonight. (***I / buy***)
7. a: What would you like to eat?
b: _____ a pizza, please. (***I / have***)
8. a: This food doesn't taste very good, does it?
b: No, it's horrible. _____ it. (***I / not / eat***)
9. a: Did you call Lisa?
b: Oh, no. I completely forgot. _____ her now. (***I / call***)

Ex.2 Fill in will ('ll) or be going to.

1. Have you finished your essay yet? — No, but I am sure I (finish) it on time.
2. I have decided what to wear for the party. — Really? And what (you/wear), then?
3. Why do you need hot soapy water? — Because I (wash) the car.
4. Did you post those letters? — No. I forgot. I (post) them this afternoon.
5. Did you book a table at the restaurant? — Yes, but I do not expect it (be) busy.
6. I am hungry. — Me too. I (make) us something to eat.
7. Look at this dog! — Oh, yes! It (swim) across the river.
8. Tony is nearly eighteen, is not he? — Yes. He (work) for his father when he leaves school.
9. Are you going into town today? — Yes. I (give) you a lift if you want.
10. I hope we (not/arrive) late for the meeting. — Do not worry. There is plenty of time.

Ex.3 Supply the Present Simple — Present Continuous — Future Simple — be going to.

1. I think it _____ (rain) when we get to the station.
2. Look at those clouds! It _____ (rain) soon.
3. As soon as she _____ (finish) her work, she'll call you.
4. We _____ (visit) Greece next month; the flights are already paid.
5. Don't worry, I _____ (help) you with your luggage.
6. We _____ (visit) our grandparents next weekend — we've already bought the tickets.
7. If the weather _____ (be) nice tomorrow, we'll go for a picnic.
8. I'm sure he _____ (get) the job when they announce the results.
9. Before the movie _____ (start), let's get some popcorn.
10. He _____ (start) his new position on Monday; everything is ready.
11. Look at that dog — it _____ (attack) any minute.

Ex.4 Choose the right variant.

1. Do you have any plans for tonight? — Well, actually I ___ to the cinema with Mark.
 - a) go
 - b) am going

- c) am going to go
d) will go
2. The dress suits you wonderfully! — Yes, I think I ____ it.
a) will buy
b) buy
c) am going to buy
3. Do you know that Claire and James ____ in a month? — Oh, really? What wonderful news!
a) will get married
b) get married
c) are getting married
4. When ____ the second term ____?
a) will / start
b) does / start
c) is / going to start
5. We ____ a test on Monday. I have to revise a lot of rules.
a) have
b) are having
c) will have
6. Why are you buying so much wallpaper? — My husband and I ____ our flat.
a) are going to redecorate
b) will redecorate
c) redecorate
7. We ____ to a new flat next week.
a) are moving
b) will move
c) move
8. The concert ____ at 7 p. m. So let's meet at 6:45 near the entrance to the concert hall.
a) will begin
b) is going to begin
c) begins
9. We ____ probably ____ to Italy for our next holiday.
a) are / going
b) will / go
10. I'm hungry. — Me too. I ____ some sandwiches.

- a) am going to make
 - b) am making
 - c) will make
11. Why are you taking out this old sewing machine? — I ___ this dress. It's too big for me now.
- a) am going to remake
 - b) will remake
 - c) am remaking
12. I'm looking forward to seeing my daughter. — When ___ she ___ back from the summer camp?
- a) is / going to come
 - b) will / come
 - c) is / coming
13. If you ___ Jack, tell him to call me. — O. K. Why? — It's a secret. — Come on! ___ you ___ him something I shouldn't know?
- a) see; will / tell
 - b) see; are / going to tell
 - c) will see; will / tell
14. Oh, the bus is so slow! I hope we late.
- a) aren't going to be
 - b) aren't
 - c) won't be

Unit 10. The Future Continuous Tense

shall be / will be + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) длительное действие, которое будет происходить в определенное время в будущем	<i>At 8 p.m. tomorrow, I will be watching a movie. =</i>	<i>Завтра в 8 вечера я буду смотреть фильм.</i>
2) запланированное заранее действие	<i>Rick will be singing tonight at the prom. =</i>	<i>Рик сегодня вечером будет петь на выпускном.</i>
3) вежливый интерес к планам другого человека (как правило, чтобы попросить его об услуге)	<i>'Will you be going to the shop?' — 'Yes, I will.' — 'Please, buy some candies for me.'</i>	<i>Ты пойдешь в магазин? — Да. — купи мне конфет, пожалуйста.</i>

Сравнение Future Simple и Future Continuous

<i>Future Simple</i>	<i>Future Continuous</i>
Сообщаем о каком-то действии/событии, которое произойдет в будущем. <i>Tomorrow I will cook a vegetarian dinner.</i>	Действие, которое будет происходить в определенное время в будущем. <i>Tomorrow at 6 p.m. I will be cooking a vegetarian dinner.</i>
Вежливая просьба или предложение что-то сделать <i>Will you cook dinner with me tonight? — Не хочешь сегодня вечером приготовить со мной ужин? (предложение приготовить ужин вместе).</i>	Вежливый интерес к планам другого человека (как правило, чтобы попросить его об услуге). <i>Will you be cooking tonight? I'd like to invite a couple of friends for dinner. — Ты будешь готовить сегодня вечером? Я бы хотел пригласить пару друзей на ужин. (интересуется планами на ужин ради гостей).</i>

Сравнение Present Continuous и Future Continuous

<i>Present Continuous</i>	<i>Future Continuous</i>
Запланированное в будущем действие	
<i>I'm flying to London next Monday. = В следующий понедельник я лечу в Лондон.</i>	<i>I will be flying to London next Monday. = В следующий понедельник я лечу в Лондон.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

be watching	will be landing	won't be playing	will be starting	will you be voting	won't be going	be going	will you be doing
-------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------	-------------------------------	----------------	----------	-------------------

1. There's an election next week. Who **will you be voting** for?
2. _____ to the shop later? — Yes, I will. Can I get you anything?
3. Emily is not well, so she _____ volleyball tomorrow.
4. Little Emma _____ school this time next year. She's growing up fast.
5. The match is on TV tonight. Will you _____ it?
6. What _____ in your new job? The same as before?
7. I _____ to the wedding. I'll be away on holiday.
8. Please fasten your seat belts. The plane _____ in ten minutes.

Ex.2 Answer the questions in the Future Continuous Tense, using the given suggestions.

1. What will she be doing on Sunday? (*make a dress*)
2. What will you be doing at this time next week? (*bathe in the Black Sea*)
3. What will grandfather be doing when we arrive? (*work in the garden*)
4. What will he be doing at the University for five years? (*study law*)
5. What will they be doing at this time tomorrow? (*fly to Moscow*)
6. What will she be doing at the concert tonight? (*sing Russian folk-songs*)
7. What will she be doing at this time the day after tomorrow? (*interview a foreign delegation*)
8. What will she be doing next term? (*lecture at the Institute*)

Ex.3 Supply will + verb or will be + -ing.

1. Sit down and fasten your seat belt. We **will take off** in a few minutes. (*take off*)
2. When _____ to the bank to draw some money? (*you go*)
3. Do you think you _____ here in five years' time? (*still work*)
4. They _____ from Dover, not Folkston. (*sail*)
5. The President _____ the Prime Minister before flying back home. (*meet*)
6. We _____ to London next Monday morning. (*drive*)

7. This time next year, I ____ my memoirs. (*write*)
8. In five years' time a permanent space station ____ the Moon. (*circle*)
9. I don't think I ____ him tonight. (*see*)

Ex.4 Put the verbs in brackets into Present Simple, Future Simple and Future Continuous

1. When I (*get*) home, my animals (*sit*) at the door waiting for me.
2. It is the middle of June. They (*come*) soon.
3. If you (*want*) to see us, come to Tom's on Sunday. We (*wait*) for you there at midday.
4. At this time next week, they (*board*) the plane to London.
5. They (*have*) English from nine to ten in this room.
6. I (*wait*) for you when you (*come*).
7. "I (*call*) for her at eight." — No, don't; she still (*sleep*).

Ex.5 Open the brackets using Future Simple, Present Simple or Future Continuous.

Use the Present Simple if the action is permanent, repeated or it is a one-time action. Use the Future Continuous to show that the action is a temporary one, taking place at a given moment in the future.

1. You (*know*) her. She (*stand*) at the newsstand. She (*wear*) a scarlet rain coat.
2. I (*tell*) her everything and I (*show*) her the papers. I promise you she (*not/ smile*) this time.
3. There (*not/be*) anyone in when we (*come*). The secretary (*have*) lunch.
4. It (*rain*) when we (*get*) there.
5. Go straight up the street. The car (*wait*) for you at the entrance to the department store.
6. We are much too early. There (*be*) no one there.
7. Of course, I (*be*) still here when you (*return*). I (*mark*) the papers.
8. I don't think she (*be*) there at that time. She (*sketch*) somewhere along the coast.

Ex.6 Choose the best verb form.

1. 'Have you decided yet?' Yes, **I'll have / I have** the roast beef, please.'
2. Q: How **will I have known / will I know** that I have won a prize?
A: You **are receiving / will receive** an email giving full details.

3. Quick get out of the car! **It's going to burst / It's bursting** into flames at any minute!
4. Don't come round before midday, because **I'll be cleaning / I'll clean** the house until then.
5. Sorry, I can't come on Thursday evening. **I'll work / I'm working** late on an important project.
6. I think, the cost of construction **is almost certainly rising/ will almost certainly rise** next year.
7. The conference **is going to begin / begins** next Friday morning at 9.00.
8. Here's the money you asked for — €1000. What **will you / are you going to do** with it?
9. Why don't you give Helen this cheap perfume instead of the expensive one! I expect, she **won't have known / won't know** the difference!

Ex.7 Translate into English.

1. Боюсь, они нам не поверят. — Пусть делают, что хотят. Я не собираюсь им ничего доказывать. 2. Пожалуй, я куплю эту книгу в подарок подруге. Я иду к ней завтра на день рождения. 3. Во сколько начнется фильм? — В 5. — Тогда я не смогу пойти. Мои занятия закончатся только в 6. 4. Они собираются уехать восьмичасовым поездом. Тогда они будут на море уже днем. 5. Летом дни станут длиннее, а ночи короче. 6. Не забудь зонт. Собирается дождь. 7. Мэри приведет своего нового друга на вечеринку. — Правда? Как ты думаешь, ему понравится наша компания? 8. Вы пообедаете со мной в понедельник? — Я бы очень хотел, но в это время я буду сдавать экзамен. 9. Что вы будете делать в это время в следующую пятницу? — Как всегда, я буду работать в саду.

Unit 11. The Future Perfect Tense

shall have / will have + V-ed/3

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
действие, которое будет завершено к определённомoу моменту в будущем	<p><i>By 6 p.m., I will have finished my work.</i></p> <p><i>She will have already left by the time you arrive.</i></p>	<p><i>К 6 часам вечера я закончу свою работу.</i></p> <p><i>Она уже уйдёт к тому времени, как ты приедешь.</i></p>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Turn the following sentences into the Future Perfect.

1. *I had done my homework by 9 o'clock. → **I shall have done my homework by 9 o'clock.***
2. They had built the new school by the first of September. → _____.
3. The teacher had looked through our exercise-books by that time. → _____.
4. We had discussed the report by four o'clock in the afternoon. → _____.
5. The pupils had read three English books by the end of the year. → _____.
6. I had written the composition by 9 o'clock. → _____.

Ex.2 Replace the infinitives in brackets by the Future Simple or the Future Perfect.

1. He _____ **will receive** (to receive) the telegram tomorrow.
2. He _____ (to receive) the telegram by tomorrow.
3. I _____ (to do) the exercises by seven o'clock.
4. I _____ (to do) the exercises in the afternoon.
5. By this time you _____ (to take your examination).
6. You _____ (to take) your examination next week.
7. The teacher _____ (to correct) our dictations in the evening.
8. The teacher _____ (to correct) our dictations by the next lesson.

Ex.3 Put the verb into the correct form, will be (doing) or will have (done).

1. Don't phone between 7 and 8. → We'll be eating then. (*we / eat*)
2. Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30.
So at 4 o'clock, _____ tennis. (*we / play*)
3. Sarah will meet you at the station. _____ for you when you arrive. (*she / wait*)
4. The meeting starts at 9.30 and won't last longer than an hour.
I'm sure that _____ by 11 o'clock. (*it / finish*)
5. Do you think _____ in the same place in ten years' time? (*you / still / live*)
6. Lisa is travelling in Europe and so far she has travelled about 1,000 miles.
By the end of the trip, _____ more than 3,000 miles. (*she / travel*)
7. If you need to contact me, _____ at the Lion Hotel until Friday. (*I / stay*)
8. Ben is on holiday and is spending his money very quickly.
If he continues like this, all his money _____ before the end of his holiday.
(*he / spend*)
9. I'm fed up with my job. I hope _____ it much longer. (*I / not / do*)

Ex.4 Put the verb into the correct form, *Future Simple*, *Future Continuous*, *Future Perfect*

1. By the time you arrive, I _____ (finish) my homework, and then I _____ (watch) a movie.
2. Tomorrow at 10 a.m., she _____ (have) a meeting while her assistant _____ (prepare) the presentation.
3. I _____ (call) you as soon as I _____ (leave) the office.
4. By next summer, we _____ (save) enough money, and then we _____ (book) our holiday.
5. When he gets home tonight, I _____ (cook) dinner, and he _____ (tell) me about his day.
6. Don't worry, they _____ (not/miss) the train because it _____ (arrive) late.
7. At 9 p.m. tomorrow, I _____ (relax) on the sofa while my brother _____ (play) computer games.
8. By the end of this month, she _____ (complete) the project and _____ (submit) it to the manager.
9. I think it _____ (rain) tomorrow, but by noon the sun _____ (come out).
10. By the time you read this message, we _____ (leave) the house, and our dog _____ (sleep) peacefully.

Ex.5 Translate into English.

1. К тому времени, как ты придёшь, я закончу отчёт и буду готовить ужин. 2. Завтра в это время мы будем лежать на пляже и наслаждаться солнцем. 3. Я позвоню тебе, как только приеду домой. 4. К следующему году они построят новый мост через реку. 5. Когда ты проснёшься, я уже уеду на работу. 6. Не звони ему в девять вечера — он будет смотреть матч. 7. К тому моменту, как фильм начнётся, мы уже купим попкорн и напитки. 8. Думаю, они не опоздают, потому что автобус придёт вовремя. 9. К 2030 году человечество освоит Марс, и учёные будут жить там постоянно.

Unit 12. The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

shall have / will have + been + V-ing

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1) действие, которое будет продолжаться к определенному моменту в будущем	<i>By next month, I will have been working here for five years. By the time they reach London, they will have been travelling for four hours.</i>	<i>В следующем месяце будет уже пять лет, как я работаю здесь. К тому времени, как они доберутся до Лондона, они будут путешествовать четыре часа.</i>
2) объяснение причины или результата в будущем на основе длительного действия в будущем	<i>They will be tired because they will have been traveling all day.</i>	<i>Они будут уставшими, потому что будут путешествовать весь день.</i>

Сравнение Future Perfect u Future Perfect Continuous

Future Perfect	Future Perfect Continuous
Подчеркивает завершенность действия к определенному моменту в будущем. <i>By 5 p.m., she will have finished her work. = К пяти часам она закончит работу.</i>	Подчеркивает длительность и непрерывность действия в будущем <i>By 5 p.m., she will have been working for 3 hours. = К пяти часам она будет работать уже три часа.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Read the situations. Make an affirmative sentence, make a negative sentence, and ask a question with "How long...?"

1. **Situation:** Sarah started working on her novel in January. She'll finish it in June.

(By June → six months of writing)

Affirmative: Sarah will have been writing her novel for six months by June.

Negative: Sarah won't have been writing her novel for less than six months by June.

Question: How long will Sarah have been writing her novel by June?

2. **Situation:** Tom moved to Madrid in 2020. He plans to return home in 2026.
 (By then → six years in Madrid)
Affirmative: Tom (live) in Madrid for six years by 2026.
Negative: Tom (not, live) in Madrid for only a year by 2026.
Question: How long in Madrid by 2026?

3. **Situation:** The company started building the new shopping center in 2023. It will open in 2028.
 (By opening → five years of construction)
Affirmative: The company (build) the shopping center for five years by the time it opens.
Negative: The company (not, build) it for less than five years by the time it opens.
Question: How long the shopping center by the time it opens?

4. **Situation:** You started studying French last year. Next year, you'll still be studying it.
 (By next year → two years of study)
Affirmative: I (study) French for two years by next year.
Negative: I (not, study) French for just a few months by next year.
Question: How long French by next year?

5. **Situation:** By the time you arrive at the party, we'll be dancing.
 (By the time you arrive → an hour of dancing)
Affirmative: We (dance) for about an hour by the time you arrive.
Negative: We (not, dance) for just a few minutes by the time you arrive.
Question: How long by the time you arrive?

6. **Situation:** Mark started driving at 8 a.m. He'll reach the city at noon.
 (From 8 to 12 → 4 hours)
Affirmative: Mark (drive) for four hours by the time he gets to the city.
Negative: Mark (not, drive) for less than four hours by the time he gets to the city.
Question: How long by the time he gets to the city?

Ex.2 Future Perfect or Future Perfect Continuous? Choose the correct verb form.

1. We are late. The film will already have (*started/been starting*) by the time we get to the cinema.
2. We will have (*flied/been flying*) non-stop for seven hours before we get to New York.
3. By the end of this year he will have (*acted/been acting*) for thirty years.
4. Next year John and Ann will have (*been/been being*) married for 25 years.
5. Mr. Jacobs will have (*worked/been working*) on this project for 3 years next month.
6. Yes, I make jam every week. I'll have (*made/been making*) about 200 kilos by the end of the summer.
7. Ann always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. Therefore, she won't be at home at 9 o'clock. She will have (*gone/ been going*) to work.
8. I hope they will have (*repaired/been repairing*) this road by the time we come back next summer.
9. His telephone is out of order. He is still repairing it. Tomorrow he will have (*repaired/been repairing*) his telephone for a week.
10. He spends all his time planting trees. He says that by the end of next year he will have (*planted/been planting*) 2,000.
11. We'd better wait till 14 December. David will have (*had/been having*) his exam by then, so he'll be able to join us.
12. I am expecting an important letter and I think it will have (*arrived/been arriving*) by Thursday.
13. Jane will have (*learnt/been learning*) English for 5 years this summer.
14. By the end of the month he will have (*climbed/been climbing*) mountains for twenty years.
15. By the end of the month he will have (*climbed/been climbing*) 50 mountains.

Ex.3 Translate into English.

1. К следующему месяцу я уже буду работать в этой компании два года.
2. К моменту, когда мы приедем, они будут ждать нас больше часа.
3. Через год она будет изучать медицину уже пять лет.
4. К тому времени, как ты закончишь школу, твой брат будет учиться в университете три года.
5. К 2030 году учёные будут исследовать этот вирус уже десять лет.
6. Когда мы доберёмся до вершины, мы будем идти около пяти часов.
7. К следующей весне они будут жить в этом доме ровно десять лет.
8. К моменту, когда вы получите наше письмо, мы будем путешествовать по Азии уже месяц.
9. К тому времени, как фильм закончится, я буду находиться в кинотеатре почти три часа.

REVISION
(Future Tenses)

Ex.1 Discuss in pairs the meaning of the verb forms and answer the questions.

1. a) When you arrive, I will cook dinner.

b) When you arrive, I will be cooking dinner.

Question: In which situation will dinner already be in progress when you arrive?

Answer: *(b) I will be cooking dinner.*

2. a) By the time you get home, I will be writing my report.

b) By the time you get home, I will have written my report.

Question: In which situation will the report already be completed when you get home?

Answer: _____.

3. a) Look at those clouds — it is going to rain soon.

b) I think it will rain later tonight.

Question: Which sentence expresses a prediction based on visible evidence?

Answer: _____.

4. a) Don't call me at 9 — I will talk to my boss then.

b) Don't call me at 9 — I will be talking to my boss then.

Question: In which situation will the conversation already be happening at 9?

Answer: _____.

5. a) When she starts her new job, she will live in London.

b) When she starts her new job, she will have lived in London for a year.

Question: In which sentence has she already been living in London for some time?

Answer: _____.

6. a) We are going to visit our grandparents next weekend.

b) We will visit our grandparents next weekend.

Question: Which sentence suggests that decision was made before speaking?

Answer: _____.

7. a) I will help you with your suitcase.

b) I am going to help you with your suitcase.

Question: Which sentence shows a spontaneous decision made at the moment of speaking?

Answer: _____.

8. a) This time tomorrow, we will fly to New York.

b) This time tomorrow, we will be flying to New York.

Question: In which situation will they already be on the plane at that time tomorrow?

Answer: _____.

9. a) I am going to start a new course next month.

b) I will start a new course next month.

Question: Which sentence shows a definite plan, not just a decision?

Answer: _____.

Ex.2 These sentences describe typical events in a day in the life of a man named Bill. The sentences are in the past, but all of these things will happen in Bill's life tomorrow. Change all of the sentences in future.

1. When Bill got up yesterday morning, the sun was shining. And tomorrow?
→ When Bill gets up tomorrow morning, the sun will be shining.
2. He shaved and showered, and then made a light breakfast. And tomorrow?
3. After he ate breakfast yesterday, he got ready to go to work. And tomorrow?
4. By the time he got to work yesterday, he had drunk three cups of coffee. And tomorrow?
5. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Bill answered his e-mail and planned his day. And tomorrow?
6. By 10:00 yesterday, he had called new clients. And tomorrow?
7. At 11:00 yesterday, he was attending a staff meeting. And tomorrow?
8. He went to lunch at noon and had a sandwich and a bowl of soup. And tomorrow?
9. After he finished eating, he took a short walk in the park before he returned to the office. And tomorrow?
10. He worked at his desk until he went to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon. And tomorrow?
11. By the time he left office, he had attended three meetings. And tomorrow?
12. When Bill got home, his children were playing in the yard. And tomorrow?
13. They had been playing since 3:00 in the afternoon. And tomorrow?
14. As soon as he finished dinner, he took the children for a walk to a nearby playground. And tomorrow?
15. Afterward, the whole family sat in the living room and discussed their day. And tomorrow?
16. By the time Bill went to bed yesterday, he had had a full day and was ready for sleep. And tomorrow?

Ex.3 Complete the text with will be, will have or will have been + the correct form of the verb in brackets.

What are your hopes for the future?

1. It's hard to make predictions too far into the future, but I think I can say quite a lot about my life in about ten years' time. I think I 1) (still live) in the same city. By that time 2) I (finish) my studies, and, who knows, perhaps I 3) (find) a good job.
2. I'm optimistic about the future, so I think that by the time I'm 35, say, 4) (make) my fortune. By then I 5) (run) my own company for about ten years, and I 6) (certainly become) millionaire! So I 7) (drive) an expensive sports car at that time!
3. I think we should all be worried about what the world 8) (be) like in fifty years' time. By then, I hope that the world's governments 9) (find) an answer to the problem of global warming, but perhaps scientists 10) (still search) for technological solutions. It's quite possible that we I 11) (still talk) about the problem, as we are now!
4. By the time I'm fifty, I expect that nearly everything 12) (change) and everyone 13) (try) their best to adapt to new circumstances. For example, I can't imagine that we 14) (use) cars, because by then most of the oil in the world 15) (run out). People 16) (travel) in electric cars, or perhaps we 17) (walk) everywhere. I hope that scientists 18) (solve) the pollution problem, but who knows! Perhaps some other worse problem 19) (come) along by then!

REVISION
(Verb tenses)

Ex.1 Use the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous of the verbs in the box to complete the extract.

In 1-10 use:

arrive	feel (2)	get	go	know	spend	text	wait	write
--------	----------	-----	----	------	-------	------	------	-------

In 11-20 use:

ask	complain	enjoy	get	(not) get on	hear	look (2)	seem
-----	----------	-------	-----	--------------	------	----------	------

I (1) **am writing** this blog in a hotel room in Perth. I (2) _____ here a couple of hours ago after a long coach journey from Adelaide. I (3) _____ pretty tired so this will only be a short post before I (4) _____ to sleep. As you (5) _____ I (6) last week in Adelaide with Ruby. I (7) _____ her a month or so ago to tell

her when I would be arriving, and she (8) _____ at the airport for me when I (9) _____ there. For the first few days I (10) _____ quite jet-lagged, but I soon (11) _____ over that after a few days of lazing around on the beach. Ruby (12) _____ living in Adelaide a lot, although she (13) _____ for a new job just now. It (14) _____ that she (15) _____ very well with her colleagues. Apparently they constantly (16) _____ about the working conditions and it (17) _____ to annoy Ruby. She (18) _____ me to pass on her best wishes to all her old friends. So now I (19) _____ forward to exploring Perth. I (20) _____ it's a wonderful place. I'll post again soon. Amy

Ex.2 Use any appropriate tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. John is in my English class. He (study) English this semester. He (take, also) some other classes. His classes (begin) at 9:00 every day.
2. Yesterday, John ate breakfast at 8:00. He (eat, already) breakfast when he (leave) for class at 8:45. He (eat, always) breakfast before he (go) to class. Tomorrow before he (go) to class, he (eat) breakfast.
3. John is in class every morning from 9:00 to 12:00. Two days ago, I (call) him at 11:30, but I could not reach him because he (attend) class at that time.
4. Don't try to call John at 11:30 tomorrow morning because he (attend) class at that time.
5. Yesterday, John took a nap from 1:00 to 2:00. I arrived at 1:45. When I (get) there, John (sleep). He (sleep) for 45 minutes by the time I got there.
6. Right now John (take) a nap. He (fall) asleep an hour ago. He (sleep) for an hour.
7. Three days ago, John (start) to read *A Farewell to Arms*, a novel by Ernest Hemingway. It is a long novel. He (finish, not) reading yet. He (read) it because his English teacher assigned it.
8. Since the beginning of the semester, John (read) three novels. Right now he (read) *A Farewell to Arms*. He (read) that novel for the past three days. He (intend) to finish it next week. In his lifetime, he (read) many novels, but this is the first Hemingway novel he (read, ever).

Ex.3 Choose the correct sentence in each group. Explain your choice.

1. a. The company has launched its new product last month, and sales are still growing.
b. The company launched its new product last month, and sales are still growing.

- c. The company has been launching its new product last month, and sales are still growing.
2. a. I worked here for three years, but I still don't feel part of the team.
b. I work here for three years, but I still don't feel part of the team.
c. I have been working here for three years, but I still don't feel part of the team.
3. a. She didn't realize how much she changed until she met her old friends again.
b. She didn't realize how much she had changed until she met her old friends again.
c. She hasn't realized how much she had changed until she met her old friends again.
4. a. Don't call me at 8 — I'll be giving a presentation then.
b. Don't call me at 8 — I'll give a presentation then.
c. Don't call me at 8 — I'm giving a presentation then.
5. a. According to the schedule, the Prime Minister is meeting the delegation tomorrow.
b. According to the schedule, the Prime Minister meets the delegation tomorrow.
c. According to the schedule, the Prime Minister will meet the delegation tomorrow.
6. a. By the time you arrive, I have finished the report.
b. By the time you will arrive, I will finish the report.
c. By the time you arrive, I will have finished the report.
7. a. He had been waiting for hours when the doctor finally saw him.
b. He was waiting for hours when the doctor finally saw him.
c. He waited for hours when the doctor finally saw him.
8. a. You look exhausted — have you worked all night?
b. You look exhausted — have you been working all night?
c. You look exhausted — are you worked all night?

9. a. By 2035, researchers will have studied the effects of this phenomenon for decades.
 b. By 2035, researchers will have been studying the effects of this phenomenon for decades.
 c. By 2035, researchers will be studying the effects of this phenomenon for decades.
10. a. They were negotiating for months before the contract was signed.
 b. They had been negotiating for months before the contract was signed.
 c. They have been negotiating for months before the contract was signed.

Ex.4 Review verb tenses. Correct the mistakes.

1. *I am studying here since last January.* → ***I have been studying here since last January.***
2. By the time I return to my country, I am away from home for more than three years.
3. As soon as I will graduate, I going to return to my hometown.
4. By the end of the 21st century, scientists will had discovered the cure for the common cold.
5. I want to get married, but I don't meet the right person yet.
6. I have been seeing that movie three times, and now I am wanting to see it again.
7. Last night, I have had dinner with two friends. I knew both of them for a long time.
8. I am not like my job at the restaurant. My brother wants me to change it. I am thinking he is right.
9. So far this week, the teachers are giving us a lot of homework every day.
10. There are more than forty presidents of the USA since it became a country.
11. While I will be studying tonight, I'm going to listen to Beethoven's Seventh Symphony.
12. We washed the dishes and clean up the kitchen after our dinner guests were leaving.
13. My neighbors are Mr. and Mrs. Jones. I know them ever since I am a child.
14. It's raining tomorrow morning.
15. Many scientists believe there is a major earthquake in California in the next few years.
16. When I got home to my apartment last night, I use my key to open the door as usual. But the door didn't open. I trying my kea again and again with no

luck. So I am knocking on the door for my wife to let me in. Finally, the door opens, but I don't saw my wife on the other side. I saw a stranger. I had been try to get into the wrong apartment! I quickly apologizing and am went to my own apartment.

Ex.5 Translate into English.

1. Я редко обращаю внимание на то, как люди выражают свои мысли, пока не услышу что-то действительно интересное. 2. К следующему году мы завершим исследование, если всё пойдёт по плану (*go according to plan*). 3. Я уже несколько раз слышал об этой идее, но ни разу не пробовал ее воплотить. 4. Я уверен, что однажды мы приземлимся на Марсе. 5. Она отказалась от предложения посетить этот музей. 6. Он работает над этой теорией уже больше десяти лет и всё ещё не нашёл окончательного доказательства. 7. Сейчас я пытаюсь понять, почему он ведёт себя так, словно знает что-то, чего не знаем мы. 8. В это время завтра я буду выступать на международной конференции. 9. Пока мы обсуждали проект, он записывал каждое слово. 10. К тому моменту, когда мы прибыли, конференция уже завершилась. 11. Они спорили об этом три часа, прежде чем пришли к соглашению. 12. К моменту, когда ты вернёшься, я уже буду работать над этим проектом почти месяц.

English Tenses in Passive Voice

Построение предложения в пассивном залоге

Подлежащее (объект воздействия)	+	Сказуемое (глагол в нужном времени)	+	Дополнение (субъект воздействия)
<i>The letter</i> Письмо		<i>was brought</i> было доставлено		<i>by postman.</i> почтальоном.

Подлежащее: В отношении чего или кого выполняется действие?

Сказуемое: Какого рода действие выполняется?

Дополнение: Кем выполняется направленное на подлежащее действие?

Сравните:

В активном залоге — *My mum baked the strawberry pie yesterday.* = Моя мама испекла клубничный пирог вчера.

В пассивном залоге — *The strawberry pie was baked by my mum yesterday.* = Клубничный пирог был испечен моей мамой вчера.

Passive voice сказуемого в предложении в обязательном порядке содержит следующие элементы: **to be+V3(e)d**. В зависимости от времени и вида действия они могут трансформироваться, но обязательно сохраняются в грамматической конструкции страдательного залога.

Видо-временные формы английского глагола в пассивном залоге

	Present (tense) <u>be (am/ is/ are) + V3</u> <u>/ V(e)d</u>	Past (tense) <u>be (was/ were) + V3</u> <u>/ V(e)d</u>	Future (tense) <u>will be + V3 / V(e)d</u>
Simple (aspect)	«+» <i>Many articles are published on this site every year.</i>	<i>Many articles were published on this site last year.</i>	<i>Many articles will be published on this site next year.</i>
	«-» <i>Some articles aren't published on this site.</i>	<i>Some articles weren't published on this site last year.</i>	<i>Some articles won't be published on this site next year.</i>
	«?» <i>Is your article published on this site?</i>	<i>Was your article published on this site?</i>	<i>Will your article be published on this site next year?</i>

Continuous (aspect)	«+»	<u>am / is / are being + V3 / V(e)d</u> <i>The cake is being baked right now.</i>	<u>Was / were being + V3 / V(e)d</u> <i>The cake was being baked when the guests came.</i>	Не используется
	«-»	<i>The cake isn't being baked right now.</i>	<i>The cake wasn't being baked when the guests came.</i>	
	«?»	<i>Is the cake being baked right now?</i>	<i>Was the cake being baked when the guests came?</i>	
Perfect (aspect)	«+»	<u>have / has been + V3 / V(e)d</u> <i>The task has been completed recently.</i>	<u>Had been + V3 / V(e)d</u> <i>The task had been completed before the lunchtime started.</i>	<u>Will have been + V3 / V(e)d</u> <i>By the time the lunchtime starts, the task will have been completed.</i>
	«-»	<i>The task hasn't been completed yet.</i>	<i>The task hadn't been completed before the lunchtime started.</i>	<i>By the time the lunchtime starts, the task won't have been completed.</i>
	«?»	<i>Has the task been completed this morning?</i>	<i>Had the task been completed before the lunchtime started?</i>	<i>Will the task have been completed by the time the lunchtime starts?</i>
Modals	«+»	<i>The documents can be printed right now.</i>	<i>The documents should have been printed yesterday.</i>	<i>The documents must be printed before noon.</i>
	«-»	<i>The documents can't be printed right now.</i>	<i>The documents shouldn't have been printed yesterday.</i>	<i>The documents must not be printed before noon.</i>
	«?»	<i>Can the documents be printed right now?</i>	<i>Should the documents have been printed yesterday?</i>	<i>Must the documents be printed at before noon?</i>

Случаи использования пассивного залога

<i>Случаи использования</i>	<i>Примеры</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1. Действие важнее исполнителя	<i>Roses should be watered every 3 days.</i> <i>The new shopping mall will be opened in the city center in a few weeks.</i>	<i>Розы нужно поливать каждые 3 дня.</i> <i>Новый торговый центр откроется в центре города в течение нескольких недель.</i>
2. Отсутствует исполнитель действия	<i>The cocktails are being made right now, don't worry.</i> <i>The house will be decorated till tomorrow evening.</i> <i>Our meeting was being held while you were somewhere in the middle of nowhere.</i>	<i>Коктейли уже делаются, не беспокойся.</i> <i>Дом будет украшен до завтрашнего вечера.</i> <i>Наша встреча продолжалась, пока ты был где-то потерян во времени и пространстве.</i>
3. Описываются определенные бедствия, неприятные события	<i>The window on the first floor was broken.</i> <i>My new car had been stolen yesterday before I came home.</i> <i>Her wallet was stolen in the restroom.</i>	<i>Окно на первом этаже было разбито.</i> <i>Мою новую машину вчера угнали до того, как я вернулся домой.</i> <i>Ее кошелек был украден в туалете.</i>
4. Безличные конструкции, общеизвестные факты и события	<i>It's believed that the more languages you know, the better career you have. —</i> <i>It's expected that all of the pupils of our school will pass the final exams.</i>	<i>Считается, что чем больше языков ты знаешь, тем лучшую карьеру ты построишь.</i> <i>Ожидается, что все ученики нашей школы сдадут финальные тесты.</i>
5. Официальный, научный или деловой стиль	<i>The data was analyzed carefully.</i>	<i>Данные были тщательно проанализированы.</i>

Сравнение форм активного и пассивного залога (примеры)

<i>Tense</i>	<i>Active voice</i>	<i>Passive voice</i>
<i>Present Simple</i>	<i>Tina makes cakes. — Тина делает торты.</i>	<i>The cakes are made by Tina. — Торты сделаны Тиной.</i>

<i>Past Simple</i>	<i>Tina made the cake yesterday. — Тина сделала торт вчера.</i>	<i>The cake was made by Tina yesterday. — Торт был сделан Тиной вчера.</i>
<i>Future Simple</i>	<i>Tina will make the cake tomorrow. — Тина сделает торт завтра.</i>	<i>The cake will be made by Tina tomorrow. — Торт будет сделан Тиной завтра.</i>
<i>Present Continuous</i>	<i>Tina is making the cake right now. — Тина делает торт именно сейчас.</i>	<i>The cake is being made by Tina right now. — Торт делается Тиной именно сейчас.</i>
<i>Past Continuous</i>	<i>Tina was making the cake when I called her. — Тина делала торт, когда я ей позвонил.</i>	<i>The cake was being made by Tina when I called her. — Торт делался Тиной, когда я ей позвонил.</i>
<i>Future Continuous</i>	<i>Tina will be making the cake tomorrow at 5 p.m. — Тина будет делать торт завтра в 5 дня.</i>	_____
<i>Present Perfect</i>	<i>Tina has already made the cake. — Тина уже сделала торт.</i>	<i>The cake has already been made by Tina. — Торт был уже сделан Тиной.</i>
<i>Past Perfect</i>	<i>Tina had already made the cake before the TV show started. — Тина сделала торт до того, как началось телешоу.</i>	<i>The cake had already been made by Tina before the TV show started. — Торт был уже сделан Тиной, когда началось телешоу.</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>Tina will have made the cake by tomorrow evening. — Тина сделает торт завтра к вечеру.</i>	<i>The cake will have been made by Tina by tomorrow evening. — Торт будет сделан Тиной к завтрашнему вечеру.</i>
<i>Present Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Tina has been making the cake all the morning. — Тина делала торт целое утро.</i>	_____
<i>Past Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Tina had been making the cake all the morning before I came home. — Тина делала торт целое утро, пока я не пришёл домой.</i>	
<i>Future Perfect Continuous</i>	<i>Tina will have been making the cake for two hours by the time I come home. — Тина будет делать торт в течение двух часов к тому моменту, как я приду домой.</i>	

EXERCISES

Ex.1 *Decide if the sentences are active (A) or passive (P).*

- Kate made the salad.* → **active**
 - The rice was made by Jamal.* → **passive**
 - Siri was making the dessert.* →
 - Andy has made the tea.* →
- Anita and Alex came to our apartment for dinner last night.* →
 - On their way over, Anita was stopped by the police for speeding.* →
 - She was upset, but Alex calmed her down.* →
- Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago.* →
 - The remains of about 14 dinosaurs are discovered every year.* →
 - After a discovery, the bones will be studied by paleontologists for years.* →

Ex.2 *Complete the passive sentences with the correct verb form of the words in the box.*

are	were	have been	will be
-----	------	-----------	---------

- Two instructors will score the tests. →The tests _____ scored by two instructors.
- Two instructors scored the tests. →The tests _____ scored by two instructors.
- Two instructors score the tests. →The tests _____ scored by two instructors.
- Two instructors have scored the tests. →The tests _____ scored by two instructors.

Ex.3 *Change each news headline into a complete sentence in a passive voice.*

- NEW BRIDGE **OPEN** BY THE MAYOR TODAY
New bridge _____ today.
- NEW STADIUM **BUILD** IN THE CITY CENTER LAST YEAR
New stadium _____ last year.
- A NEW AIRPORT **OPEN** NEXT YEAR
A new airport _____ next year.
- 200,000 CARS **RECALL** FOR BRAKE DEFECTS SINCE LAST YEAR
Two hundred thousand cars _____ for brake defects since last year.

5. THE PROJECT **DISCUSS** BY EXPERTS THESE DAYS

The project _____ these days.

Ex.4 Read the text. Answer the questions in complete sentences using verbs in passive voice.

Early Writing Materials

The chief writing material of ancient times was papyrus. It was used in Egypt, Greece, and other Mediterranean lands. Parchment, another writing material that was widely used in ancient times, was made from the skins of animals, such as sheep and goats. After the hair had been removed, the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth to make a writing surface. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese. Ink has been used for writing and drawing throughout history. No one knows when the first ink was developed. The ancient Egyptians and Chinese made ink from various natural substances such as berries, soot, and tree bark. Through the centuries, thousands of different formulas have been developed for ink. Most ink today is made from chemicals.

1. Before paper was invented, what materials were used for writing?
2. What was parchment made from?
3. What three things were done to animal skins to make writing material?
4. Who first used paper?
5. When was ink first used?
6. In ancient times, what ingredients did the Egyptians and Chinese use for ink?
7. What substances are in ink today?

Ex.5 Change the sentences to passive. Use the by-phrase.

1. *Everybody loves this dish.* → **The dish is loved by everybody.**
2. Have they collected all the necessary information?
3. Nobody will ever buy such an ugly picture.
4. The police caught this criminal a year ago.
5. The doctor was examining a patient when I came.
6. The noise frightened the children.
7. We had spent all the money by the end of our vacation.

8. Will they raise prices again?
9. Our neighbours are growing new flowers this year.
10. They use this word in several meanings.

Ex.6 Choose the sentences that have the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. The assistant manager interviewed Mr. Evans for the sales job.
 - a. *Mr. Evans was interviewed.* ✓
 - b. Someone was interviewed by Mr. Evans.
 - c. The assistant manager was interviewed.
2. There was a group of noisy kids at the movie theater. They were told to leave.
 - a. The kids told others to leave.
 - b. The kids were told something.
 - c. Someone told the kids to leave.
3. A famous architect has been asked to design the new library.
 - a. An architect has asked someone to design the library.
 - b. Someone would like the architect to design the new library.
 - c. A famous architect would like to design the new library.
4. I was ignored by the salesclerk while she spent five minutes talking on the phone.
 - a. The salesclerk ignored me.
 - b. I ignored the salesclerk.
 - c. Someone ignored the salesclerk.
5. After the speech, the audience will ask the speaker follow-up questions.
 - a. The speaker will ask questions.
 - b. The audience will be asked questions.
 - c. The speaker will be asked questions.
6. The staff is planning a retirement party for Dr. Wilson.
 - a. A party is being planned by Dr. Wilson.
 - b. A party is being planned by the staff.
 - c. The staff is being planned the party.

Ex.7 Make true sentences by matching the information on the left with the information on the right. Change the verb forms as necessary. Some sentences are passive, and some are active. Three items are questions.

Example: The electric light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.

1. The electric light bulb was ___ h ___	a. (spell) with a double “t.”
2. An island is ___	b. (grow) because of poor smartphone security
3. Some forest fires are ___	c. the earth and (send) back images
4. Is ID theft ___	d. (wear) by more women than men
5. The -ing form of sit is ___	e. (use) around 1000 B.C.
6. Weather satellites orbit ___	f. (cause) by lightning.
7. Coins were first ___	g. (frighten) by math.
8. Will taxes ___	h. (invent) by Thomas Edison.
9. Students have ___	i. always (collect) by governments
10. People with numerophobia are ___	j. (surround) by water
11. Are wedding rings ___	k. long (confuse) by English grammar

Ex.8 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct passive form.

1. What’s going on here? What’s all that noise? — Sorry! My flat _____ (to redecorate).
2. If the work _____ (not, to finish) by evening, you’ll be in trouble.
3. By the time I left the problem _____ (not, to solve) though it _____ (to discuss) actively for quite a long time.
4. Such clothes _____ (not, to wear) now. They are old-fashioned.
5. Don’t worry. Nobody will notice such a tiny spot. It _____ (not, to pay attention to).
6. She suddenly realized that she _____ (to listen to) in complete silence.
7. She _____ (not, to introduce) by the hostess and felt embarrassed as she herself didn’t know anybody.
8. I’ll take a picture of you when you _____ (to give) the prize.
9. What was that book about? — It _____ (to devote) to the writer’s brother who _____ (to kill) in the war.
10. He _____ (to offer) this job several times. — What made him refuse it?

Ex.9 Correct the mistakes where it is necessary.

1. *There's something wrong with the piano. It is been tuned now.* → **It is being tuned now.**
2. *The boy was made to stay after classes.* → **correct** _____
3. *When will be the picture finished?* → _____
4. *The question has been being discussed for two hours already.* → _____
5. *They were recommended to call the police.* → _____
6. *You'll have to wait. The documents are looking through.* → _____
7. *She was looked at with curiosity when she entered.* → _____
8. *Mary was sure she had been watched all the way.* → _____
9. *Who the book was written by?* → _____
10. *The message was written by a pencil.* → _____
11. *This event has much spoken lately.* → _____

Ex.10 Translate into English.

1. Его доклады всегда слушают с большим вниманием.
2. Вам объяснили, как пройти к театру?
3. Ему уже послали телеграмму.
4. Почему этот факт упомянули дважды к концу беседы?
5. Сейчас просматривают наши контрольные работы.
6. Мне пообещали, что подумают над моим предложением.
7. Ученикам несколько раз повторили задание вчера, но некоторые его так и не поняли.
8. Какой фильм показывали сегодня детям?
9. Визит будет нанесен в начале месяца.
10. Когда я пришел, по радио пели мою любимую песню.
11. Вы уверены, что вам рассказали всю правду?
12. Это тот самый мюзикл, о котором сейчас так много говорят?
13. Как тебе понравилась вечеринка, на которую тебя пригласили Смиты?
14. Ты не знаешь, над чем они так долго смеются?
15. Где его ждали в это время вчера?

PART II.
TYPES OF
QUESTIONS

Виды вопросительных
предложений

PART II. TYPES OF QUESTIONS Виды вопросительных предложений

В английском языке существует несколько основных **видов вопросительных предложений**, каждый из которых служит своей цели (зависит от специфики запрашиваемой информации) и требует определённого типа ответа. Они классифицируются по форме, функции и ожидаемому типу ответа.

Общий вопрос / General question задают, когда необходимо получить подтверждение или опровержение той или иной информации, прояснения ситуации.

При построении общего вопроса используется обратный порядок слов (инверсия). Общий вопрос начинается со вспомогательного (e.g. am, is, are, was, were, have, had, will) или модального глагола (e.g. can, may, should, shall, need, would), за которым следует подлежащее, а затем смысловой глагол (сказуемое) и остальные члены предложения (дополнения, обстоятельства места, времени, образа действия и т.д.).

Are you writing a letter? — Yes, I am / No, I'm not.

Can you play the piano? — No, I can't / Yes, I can.

Would you like a cup of coffee? — Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.

Когда смысловой глагол стоит в Present Simple, вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола do или does.

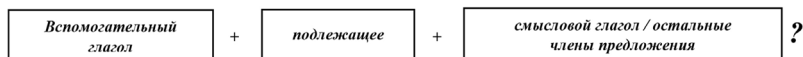
Does Amy live in a flat? — Yes, she does.

Do they live in Chicago? — No, they don't.

Когда смысловой глагол стоит в Past simple, вопрос строится с помощью вспомогательного глагола did.

Did it rain last night? — No, it didn't.

Структура общего вопроса



Такой тип вопроса требует ответа «да» / «нет» *, поэтому его еще называют “Yes / No question”, и включает:

Положительный ответ: Yes + личное местоимение + вспомогательный глагол (‘Have you finished?’ ‘Yes, I have’).

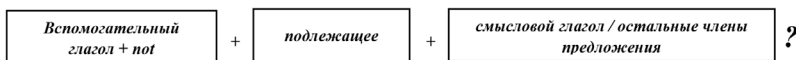
Отрицательный ответ: No + личное местоимение + вспомогательный глагол с отрицательной частицей “not” (*‘Did you see that film?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’*).

* Может сопровождаться уточнением:

‘Do you like green tea?’ ‘Yes, I do. I love green tea’.

Отрицательная форма общих вопросов

Структура отрицательного общего вопроса*



Отрицательные вопросы содержат в себе частицу «not» и используются в речи в следующих случаях:

1) для получения подтверждения (ожидание утвердительного ответа «Yes, I do», «Yes, it is»).

- *Don't you like chocolate?* = *Разве ты не любишь шоколад?*
- *Isn't it a beautiful day?* = *Разве сегодня не прекрасный день?*

2) для выражения удивления, недовольства, упрека, сомнения

- *Didn't I tell you to call me?* = *Разве я не говорил тебе позвонить мне?!*
- *Haven't you done it yet?* = *Ты всё ещё не сделал это?!*

3) для выражения восхищения, похвалы, восторга

- *Isn't she amazing?* — *Разве она не потрясающая?!*
- *Didn't he play wonderfully?* — *Разве он не великолепно сыграл?!*

*Форма отрицательного вопроса может быть:

- **Сокращённая:** *Isn't she nice?* (разговорная, чаще используется)
- **Полная:** *Is she not nice?* (более формальная или выразительная)

Примеры общих вопросов и возможные варианты ответов:

Общий вопрос / Общий вопрос с отрицанием	Ответ (краткий)		Ответ (с разъяснением, уточнением)
	Утвердительный	Отрицательный	
Have we met before?	Yes, we have.	No, we haven't.	Yes, we have. I think we met at the conference.
Haven't we met before?			I don't think so.

Isn't it a beautiful day?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.	Yes, it's absolutely gorgeous! No, it isn't. It's too hot.
			Well, it's nice, but a bit windy.

Специальный вопрос (*Wh-question / Special Question*) задают с целью получения новой конкретной информации. Начинаются специальные вопросы с вопросительного слова (*who? whom? what? where? when? why? whose? how much?* и др.), после которого следуют вспомогательный глагол, подлежащее, глагол-сказуемое (смысловый) и остальные члены предложения. Обычно требует информативного, развернутого ответа, в разговорной речи возможен краткий вариант.

Структура специального вопроса

Вопросительное слово	+	вспомогательный глагол	+	подлежащее	+	глагол-сказуемое	+	остальные члены предложения	?
----------------------	---	------------------------	---	------------	---	------------------	---	-----------------------------	---

* Вопрос к подлежащему с *Who?* (*What?*) выносится как отдельный тип вопроса, т.к. имеет свои правила построения.

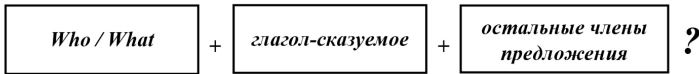
Примеры специальных вопросов и возможные варианты ответов:

Вопрос	Возможные варианты ответов
'Where did you go on your vacation?'	'We went to Spain.'
	'To Spain.'
'Why is she learning English?'	'She is learning English because she wants to get a new job'.
	'For work'.

Вопрос к подлежащему строится по особым правилам и отличается от других типов вопросов:

- Не используется вспомогательный глагол (*do/does/did*).
- Порядок слов сохраняется как в утвердительном предложении.
- На первое место ставится вопросительное слово — обычно «*Who*» или «*What*», в зависимости от того, о ком или о чем мы спрашиваем.
- Вопросительное слово, заменяющее подлежащее, согласуется с глаголом в единственном числе независимо от того, в каком числе стоит само подлежащее.
- Ответ на вопрос конкретизирует субъекта действия, дает новую информацию о деятеле.

Структура вопроса к подлежащему



Примеры вопросов к подлежащему и возможные варианты ответов:

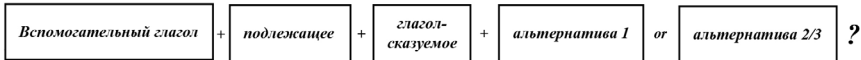
Вопрос	Возможные варианты ответов
‘ <i>Who plays the piano?</i> ’	‘ <i>Sarah and John play.</i> <i>Sarah and John.</i> <i>Sarah and John do.</i> ’
‘ <i>Who wrote this book?</i> ’	‘ <i>J.K. Rowling wrote it.</i> <i>J.K. Rowling.</i> <i>J.K. Rowling did.</i> ’
‘ <i>What causes headaches?</i> ’	‘ <i>Stress causes headaches</i> ’

Сравнение вопроса к подлежащему с вопросом к дополнению (специальный вопрос)

Вопрос к подлежащему	Вопрос к дополнению (специальный вопрос)
Who plays football? → Tom does. Кто играет в футбол? — Том (играет).	What does Tom play? → He plays football. Во что играет Том? — Он играет в футбол.

Альтернативный вопрос (Alternative question) — это вопрос, в котором предлагается конкретный выбор между двумя или более вариантами. Такой тип вопроса образуется по правилам построения общего вопроса. Основное отличие состоит лишь в том, что требуется добавить союз *or*, который и вводит альтернативные варианты ответа.

Структура альтернативного вопроса



Примеры альтернативных вопросов и возможные варианты ответов:

Вопрос	Вариант ответа	Примеры ответов
<i>Do you want pizza or pasta for dinner? = Ты хочешь пиццу или пасту на ужин?</i>	Один из вариантов	<i>I prefer pasta.</i>
	Оба варианта	<i>Both. / I like both pizza and pasta.</i>
	Ни один вариант	<i>Neither. / I don't like either.</i>
	Уточнение	<i>It depends. / Sometimes one, sometimes the other.</i>

Разделительный вопрос (Tag question) задают, чтобы подтвердить или уточнить утверждение, которое уже предполагается говорящим. Обычно используется, чтобы убедиться, что твой собеседник согласен, проверить информацию, выразить сомнение или просто начать, или поддержать разговор, проявить вежливость. В русском языке разделительный вопрос также ещё называют «вопрос с хвостиком», «хвостатый вопрос», хотя “tag” в переводе с английского языка означает: ярлык, метка, приставка, прицепка (буквально), а в грамматике — короткая добавка к предложению.

Например, “She is your sister, isn’t she? «, где *isn’t she?*» — это **tag** (по-английски: *question tag*), а по-русски: «хвостик вопроса» = «не так ли?».

Разделительный вопрос состоит из двух частей, разделенных запятой. Первая часть представляет собой повествовательное (утвердительное или отрицательное) предложение с прямым порядком слов. Вторая часть включает краткий вопрос (tag) с обратным порядком слов, в котором первую позицию занимает вспомогательный или модальный глагол, а вторую — местоимение, соответствующее подлежащему.

Структура разделительного вопроса

Утвердительное предложение	+	вспомогательный / модальный глагол + not + местоимение	?
Отрицательное предложение	+	вспомогательный / модальный глагол + местоимение	?

Примеры разделительных вопросов и возможные варианты ответов:

Утвердительное / Отрицательное предложение	Tag-question («хвостик»)	Ответ (краткий)		Ответ (полный / с разъяснением, уточнением)
		Утвердительный (утверждение верно)	Отрицательный (утверждение неверно)	
<i>He plays tennis,</i>	<i>doesn't he?</i>	<i>Yes, he does.</i>	<i>No, he doesn't.</i>	<i>No, she doesn't play tennis. / Yes, he plays tennis.</i>
<i>He doesn't play tennis,</i>	<i>does he?</i>			
<i>You're tired,</i>	<i>aren't you?</i>	<i>Yes, I am.</i>	<i>No, I'm not.</i>	<i>Yes, I'm tired. / No, I'm not tired.</i>
<i>I'm not late,</i>	<i>am I?</i>	<i>Yes, you are.</i>	<i>No, you are not.</i>	<i>Of course not. / Not at all.</i>

<i>He can drive,</i>	<i>can't he?</i>	<i>No, he can't.</i>	<i>Yes, he can.</i>	<i>Actually, no. He's still learning (ответ с разъяснением, уточнением)</i>
----------------------	------------------	----------------------	---------------------	---

Особые случаи построения tag-questions

- *I am* → *aren't I?*
 В утверждении с «am» (без отрицания) в «хвостике» после него используется «aren't I?», а не «amn't I»
I'm early, aren't I? = Я рано, не так ли?
I'm late again, aren't I? = Я опять опоздал, да?
Сравните: *I'm late, aren't I?* → *I'm not late, am I?*
- *Let's...* → *shall we*
 Когда предложение начинается с «Let's» (Let us), оно подразумевает предложение сделать что-то вместе («Давайте **мы**... что-то сделаем»). В хвостике всегда используется «shall we» как логичное продолжение предложения.
Let's begin, shall we? = Давайте начнём, хорошо? / Начнём, не так ли? / Ну что, начнём?
- *[Imperative]*, will you?*
 * Imperatives (повелительное наклонение)
 Повелительное наклонение используется в двух целях:
 — обычная просьба или команда
Open the door, will you? = Откройте дверь, хорошо?
 — усиленное предупреждение или напоминание. Также может звучать как укор.
Don't be late, will you? = Не опаздывай, ладно?
- Отрицательные слова: **nobody, nothing, no one** → хвостик утвердительный
Nobody called, did they?* = Никто не звонил, правда?
Nothing happened, did it?* = Ничего не случилось, не так ли?
No one saw him, did they? = Никто не видел его, так?
She never complains, does she? = Она никогда не жалуется, не так ли?
He hardly works, does he? = Вряд ли он работает, верно?

*Местоимение в хвостике соответствует по смыслу подлежащему в предложении:
Nobody / No one → *they*
Nothing → *it*

Особенности построения всех типов вопросов

на примере следующего предложения: *The sun rises in the east.* = *Солнце встаёт на востоке* (время: *Present Simple*).

Тип вопроса	Вопрос	Ответ
Общий вопрос (Yes/No)	<i>Does the sun rise in the east?</i>	<i>Yes, it does. / No, it doesn't. Yes, the sun rises in the east. I think it does. Actually, it rises in the east.</i>
Специальный вопрос (Wh-)	<i>Where does the sun rise?</i>	<i>In the east. It rises in the east. As far as I know, in the east.</i>
Вопрос к подлежащему (Who/What)	<i>What rises in the east?</i>	<i>The sun. The sun rises in the east.</i>
Альтернативный вопрос (...or...)	<i>Does the sun rise in the east or in the west?</i>	<i>The sun rises in the east. I'm pretty sure it's the east.</i>
Разделительный вопрос (Tag)	<i>The sun rises in the east, doesn't it?</i>	<i>Yes, it does. No, it doesn't. Of course it does. Absolutely.</i>
Отрицательная форма общего вопроса	<i>Doesn't the sun rise in the east?</i>	<i>Yes, it does. (удивлённое подтверждение) No, it doesn't. (опровержение)</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Make Yes/No questions.

1. <i>You're late.</i> → <i>Am I late?</i>	9. She will start tomorrow. →
2. This is the New York train. →	10. She would ask a question. →
3. Your report is done. →	11. The telegram will be tomorrow. →
4. Liza is reading in the garden. →	12. My friend will be staying. →
5. The students are studying. →	13. They must like an invitation. →
6. Tony gives English lessons. →	14. They often talk like that. →
7. Sasha and Nelly were arguing. →	15. I do exercises every morning. →
8. We live at the seaside. →	16. Sula went to the cafe. →

Ex.2 Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- (when / was / built / this house?)* → ***When was this house built?***
- (how / cheese / is / made?)* → _____?
- (what time / arriving / your friends / are?)* → _____?
- (why / was / cancelled / the meeting?)* → _____?

5. (when / invented / paper / was?) → _____?
6. (where / your parents / were / born?) → _____?
7. (how / the accident / did / happen?) → _____?
8. (how many / speak / can / languages / you?) → _____?

Ex.3 Insert the correct auxiliary verb in the following general questions.

Example: you and Fred great friends? → *Are you and Fred great friends?*

1. your brother like playing volleyball?
2. you have any relatives in the Crimea?
3. your teacher a young woman?
4. you like to join me?
5. Charles' parents English?
6. Robert got a camera?
7. you tired after classes?
8. Mary often go to the theatre?
9. I wrong?
10. you always get good marks?

Ex.4 Answer the following general questions with "Yes" or "No."

1. *Are you good at remembering theories and terms?* → **Yes, I am. / No, I am not.**
2. Do you study engineering at your faculty?
3. Are you a first-year student?
4. Do you feel nervous before exams?
5. Can you bake pies?
6. Would you like to be younger?
7. Is it easy for you to work in a group?
8. Does your cousin live with you?

Ex.5 Rewrite these negative questions using short forms expressing disbelief, surprise.

1. *Is she not studying for the exam now?* → **Isn't she studying for the exam now?**
2. Are they not working on their group project today?
3. Was he not interested in psychology before?
4. Were you not at the lecture yesterday?

5. Are you not coming to the seminar tomorrow?
6. Can you not see the difference between these two theories?
7. Could you not help me with this report?
8. Do you not understand this experiment?
9. Does he not attend practical classes regularly?
10. Did you not read the article about memory research?
11. Have you not submitted your assignment yet?
12. Has she not started writing her thesis yet?

Ex.6 Express surprise using a general question with negation.

1. My elder brother can't help me with English. → (to know English)
_____?
2. I saw Paul in the library yesterday. — (to study usually at home)
_____?
3. Nick is reading a book on philosophy. — (to prefer novels)
_____?
4. I'm really hungry. — (to have lunch, yet) _____
_____?
5. Sam didn't come to the meeting. — (to feel ill) _____
_____?
6. I can't play this game. — (to know the rules) _____
_____?
7. Alice is watching a horror film alone. — (to be afraid of such movies)
_____?
8. Sam is going to play hockey. — (to have a headache)
_____?
9. I often have to go out to have dinner. — (your wife, cook well)
_____?

Ex.7 Translate into English.

1. Неужели ты не знаешь этого писателя? — Нет, не знаю.
2. Разве у тебя нет этой книги? — Нет.
3. Неужели тебе не нравится этот фильм? — Нет, нравится.
4. Разве Лина тебе не подруга? — Да, подруга.
5. Неужели ты не видишь этого? — Вижу.
6. Разве у тебя нет инструмента? — Нет, есть.
7. Неужели ты меня не помнишь? — Ну как же, помню.
8. Разве она не играет на скрипке? — Да, не играет.

Ex.8 Complete the following sentences by adding the correct question tag.

1. Let's go to the beach, _____?
2. Nobody knows the answer, _____?
3. Please be quiet, _____?
4. Nothing is wrong, _____?
5. Don't forget to call me, _____?
6. No one has arrived yet, _____?
7. Let's finish this exercise, _____?
8. She rarely watches television, _____?
9. Pass me the salt, _____?
10. He hardly ever exercises, _____?

Ex.9 Complete these sentences with a question tag.

1. As far as I know Jim, he hates football and never plays it, ____?
A) didn't he B) will he C) does he D) didn't she E) don't I
2. Tom, the Browns' only son, died in a terrible accident last year. Before that event, however, the family used to be very cheerful people, ____, dad?
A) hadn't they B) didn't they C) weren't they D) didn't he E) wasn't it
3. That is very important for him, ____?
A) isn't it B) isn't that C) is it D) is that E) isn't this
4. Everybody should visit this museum, ____?
A) should they B) should he C) shouldn't they D) should we E) shouldn't we
5. Tomorrow, instead of going to Madrid with my boss, I am going to London, ____?
A) am not I B) aren't I C) don't I D) won't I E) am I
6. Neither of the workers was happy with the new legislation, ____?
A) wasn't they B) weren't they C) did they D) didn't they E) were they
7. You really think that those over there are our new teacher's kids, ____?
A) isn't it B) don't you C) aren't they D) do you E) isn't he
8. They had to provide some evidence to the court to clear him of the accusation, ____?
A) wouldn't they B) hadn't he C) didn't he D) hadn't they E) didn't they

Case 3: The Afternoon Activity

Situation: For the afternoon, we have two options: a visit to the science museum or a walk in the central park.

Your Question: ____ (*would like*) _____

Case 4: The Evening Debate

Situation: For dinner, we can't decide. We could get traditional pizza, or we could try some local sushi.

Your Question: ____ (*would prefer*) _____

Case 5: The Weekend Plan

Situation: On Saturday, we could go to the beach, or we could go to the indoor cinema.

Your Question: ____ (*would like*) _____

Ex.12 Find the sentences with mistakes. Correct them.

1. Is the meeting in the conference room or in the cafeteria?
2. Do you prefer summer or you like winter?
3. We are watching a comedy or a drama tonight?
4. Did he take the train or he took the bus?
5. Does the class start at nine or at ten?
6. Her new job interesting or is it boring?
7. Do they play tennis on Saturday or they play on Sunday?

Ex.13 Special Questions.

“Investigation: Who Stole the Donut?”

Scenario: The mascot has disappeared from the office of a small but proud IT company — a plush donut named Glazurik. Everyone is in a panic! You are the detective, and you need to ask the right questions to gather the information and find the culprit (*виновный*).

Part 1: “The First Clues”

Task: Complete the questions with the appropriate question words.

Words to choose from: *What, Why, Where, When, How, Whose, What kind of, How many*

1. “_____ was stolen?” — “The pink donut mascot.”
2. “_____ did it happen?” — “Sometime between 6 PM yesterday and 9 AM today.”
3. “_____ did the thief get into the office?” — “We found a window unlocked in the meeting room.”
4. “_____ was the donut kept?” — “On the reception desk.”
5. “_____ would someone do this?” — “That’s the big mystery, detective.”
6. “_____ fingerprints are these on the window?” — “We don’t know yet.”
7. “_____ people have access to the office after hours?” — “About ten.”
8. “_____ evidence do we have so far?” — “Just the fingerprints and a tiny piece of blue fabric.”

Part 2: “Interviewing the Suspects”

Task: Form correct special questions based on the answers. Use the prompts in brackets.

Suspect №1: Alina, Designer

1. Answer: “I left the office at 6 PM because I had a date.”
Your question: (What time / you / leave) _____
_____?
2. Answer: “I saw Mark near the coffee machine. He was acting strangely.”
Your question: (Who / you / see) _____
_____?
3. Answer: “I love the donut because he inspires creativity!”
Your question: (Why / you / love the donut) _____
_____?

Suspect №2: Mark, Developer

1. Answer: "I was working late to finish the report."
Your question: (Why / you / work late) _____
_____?
2. Answer: "I drink about four cups of coffee every night."
Your question: (How much coffee / you / drink / usually) _____
_____?
3. Answer: "I remember hearing a strange noise from the storage room at around 8 PM."
Your question: (What / you / hear) _____
_____?

Part 3: "Analyzing the Evidence — Tricky Questions"

Task: Ask one logical question that will lead to the answer. Pay attention to the tenses and structure!

1. Clue: A cup with traces of green tea was found on the table.
Your question to the team: (Who / drink / green tea / yesterday) _____
_____?
2. Clue: The security camera showed someone in a blue jacket leaving through the back door.
Your question to the security guard: (What color / jacket / the person / wear) _____?
3. Clue: The culprit left a note with threats.
Your question to the psychologist: (What / the note / say) _____
_____?

Ex.14 Ask special questions.

Part 1: Questions to the Object/Adverbial

Instructions: Ask questions about the highlighted part of the sentence.

1. **Anna** bought a new car yesterday.
Question: _____?

2. She bought **a new car** yesterday.
Question: _____?
3. She met her friend **at the cinema**.
Question: _____?
4. They are going to travel **because they need a vacation**.
Question: _____?
5. The meeting will last **for two hours**.
Question: _____?

Part 2: Questions to the Subject

Instructions: Ask questions about the highlighted subject. Remember the rule: no auxiliary verb (do/does/did), and the verb is in the 3rd person form!

1. **My brother** can play the guitar very well.
Question: _____?
2. **This book** belongs to the teacher.
Question: _____?
3. **The heavy rain** ruined the picnic.
Question: _____?

Ex.15 Identify the questions by their type.

General question	Special question	Subject Question	Tag Question	Alternative question
------------------	------------------	------------------	--------------	----------------------

1. Do you usually drink coffee in the morning? _____
2. She is a talented musician, isn't she? _____
3. Who lives in that old house? _____
4. Would you like tea or coffee? _____
5. What did you talk about with your teacher? _____

6. They won't be late, will they? _____
7. Can you speak any other languages? _____
8. Whose book is on the table? _____
9. Who opened the window? _____
10. Did he go to the library or to the cafe? _____
11. How much does this jacket cost? _____
12. You haven't seen my keys, have you? _____
13. Is it going to rain tomorrow? _____
14. When does the concert start? _____
15. Who broke this vase? _____

Ex.16 Make questions using the construction: How long does it take ...?

Example: by underground, your house, the city center? → How long does it take to get by underground from your house to the city center?

1. by train, Moscow, St. Petersburg?
2. on foot, your house, the nearest shop?
3. by plane, Moscow, London?
4. by car, your country-house, Moscow?
5. by plane, Glasgow, Edinburgh?
6. by bus, your house, the nearest underground station?
7. by train, France, England?
8. by bicycle, your house, the park?
9. by underground, your house, your friend's place?
10. by car, your place, the airport?

Ex.17 Translate into English.

1. Кто твой отец по профессии? 2. Сколько времени вам надо, чтобы приготовить все необходимое? 3. Сегодня солнечная или дождливая погода? 4. Какой язык тебе хотелось бы изучать? 5. Сколько у вас работы на сегодня? 6. Кто живет в этом доме? 7. Разве ты не знаешь его имени? — Нет. 8. Мы идем в кино или в театр сегодня вечером? 9. У них еще нет детей, не так ли? — Да, нет. 10. Неужели ты ещё не сделал это задание? 11. С кем бы тебе хотелось потанцевать? 12. Сколько у нее братьев и сестер? 13. Давай навестим его, а? 14. Что значит это слово? 15. Станция метро далеко отсюда, не так ли? — Нет, совсем близко.

PART III.
DIRECT AND INDIRECT
SPEECH
SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Перевод из прямой речи
в косвенную.
Согласование времен.

PART III.
DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES
Перевод из прямой речи в косвенную.
Согласование времен.

Unit 13. The author's words in the present tense.

Слова автора в настоящем времени

В прямой речи утверждение представляет собой повествовательное предложение, которое переводится в косвенную при помощи союза **that**. Союз **that** часто опускается.

"I work from home," he says. → He says that he works from home. → He says he works from home.

- Если в прямой речи содержится общий вопрос, для перевода в косвенную речь нужен союз **if** или **whether**. Порядок слов становится прямым (как в утверждении), и мы убираем вопросительный знак.

She asks, "Do you have a pen?" → She asks if I have a pen.

He wonders, "Is it raining outside?" → He wonders whether it is raining outside.

- Для специальных вопросов вопросительное слово (**what, where, when, why, how**) само становится союзом. Порядок слов также меняется на прямой.

He asks me, "Where does Maria live?" → He asks me where Maria lives.

Helen wonders, "Where did they hide the money?" → Helen wonders where they hid the money.

They inquire, "What time will the meeting start?" → They inquire what time the meeting will start.

- Для просьб и приказов (Requests and Commands) глагол в косвенной речи заменяется на **to + инфинитив**. Отрицательная форма: **not + to + инфинитив**. Глагол **say** часто меняется на **ask, tell** или **order**.

The boss says, "Please, send the report." → The boss asks me to send the report.

The officer shouts, "Don't park here!" → The officer orders us not to park there.

Примечания:

- Обратите внимание на смысловое изменение личных и притяжательных местоимений при переводе из прямой речи в косвенную.

"I'm tired," → *He says **he** is tired.*

"This is my book," → *She says it is **her** book.*

Mum asks, "Did you have a good time?" → *Mum asks if I **had** a good time.*

- **Say vs. Tell:** Если вы указываете, кому адресована речь, используйте **tell** + **объект** вместо say.

My Granny often says to me, "Don't be lazy." *My Granny often **tells me** not to be lazy.*

He says to me, "I agree." → *He **tells me** (that) he agree.*

She says, "It's late." → *She **says** (that) it is late. (Здесь объект не указан, поэтому said не меняется).*

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Put the following sentences into reported speech.

I.

1. My sister says, "You are always using my phone without asking!"
2. Tom says, "I have never tried sushi, but I want to try it."
3. The manager says to me, "You must finish the report by Friday."
4. Our parents say, "You weren't careful with the new car."
5. He says, "I was working in the garden all morning."

II.

1. I ask my sister, "Did you get bad marks at school?"
2. Mary asks her parents, "Are we going to the country on Saturday?"
3. Little Sam wonders, "Have they brought a new toy for me?"
4. Dad asks Lucy, "Do you understand everything in this subject?"
5. My friend asks, "Can your brother really play the violin?"

III.

1. The doctor advises, "Get more rest and drink plenty of water."
2. My friend says to me, "Never trust his promises."
3. The coach asks, "Team, don't be late for the training session."
4. The sick child asks, "Give me something tasty, Mum."
5. I say to my brother, "Don't forget to call me when you arrive."

Ex.2 Correct the mistakes where it is necessary.

1. Direct: "I need your help," she says.
Reported: She says that she need my help. (Correct / Incorrect)
2. Direct: "We are watching a movie," they say.
Reported: They say that they are watching a movie. (Correct / Incorrect)
3. Direct: "It will rain later," he says to me.
Reported: He says to me that it will rain later. (Correct / Incorrect)
4. Direct: "I have bought a new car," she says to me.
Reported: She tells me that I have bought a new car. (Correct / Incorrect)
5. Direct: "Did you see Elena at the bank yesterday?" Peter asks.
Reported: Peter asks if did I see Elena at the bank yesterday. (Correct / Incorrect)
6. Direct: "We can't understand the rules," the students said to the teacher.
Reported: The students told the teacher that they couldn't understand the rules. (Correct / Incorrect)
7. Direct: "Please, bring me the report," the boss says.
Reported: The boss asks bring me the report. (Correct / Incorrect)

Ex.3 Translate the following sentences into English using reported speech.

I.

1. Моя сестра говорит: «Я не люблю шоколад».
2. Друг спрашивает меня: «Ты можешь помочь мне с домашним заданием?»
3. Учитель просит детей: «Пожалуйста, откройте учебники на странице 10».
4. Она говорит: «Я жду автобус уже 20 минут».
5. Дедушка советует мне: «Слушай своих родителей».
6. Они интересуются: «Когда начнется концерт?»
7. Босс говорит сотруднику: «Ты должен закончить отчёт сегодня».
8. Мой брат говорит: «Вчера я играл в футбол».

9. Мама спрашивает: «Вы уже поужинали?»
10. Он говорит: «Я не могу найти свои ключи».

II.

1. Мой друг говорит мне: «Это моя любимая книга».
2. Мама интересуется: «Дети уже сделали уроки?»
3. Директор хочет знать: «Будет ли завтра собрание?»
4. Она спрашивает меня: «Тебе нравится подарок?»
5. Они интересуются: «Можно нам прийти немного позже?»
6. Он говорит нам: «Я работаю сейчас над этим проектом».
7. Директор спрашивает его: «Когда они отправят отчет?»
8. Она говорит мне: «Я помогу тебе через несколько минут».
9. Он спрашивает: «Вы ждете кого-то?»
10. Полицейский приказывает: «Покиньте место происшествия!»

Unit 14. The author's words in the past tense. Sequence of tenses.

Слова автора в прошедшем времени. Согласование времен.

Использование прошедшего времени в словах автора влечет за собой **согласование времен**. Это означает, что если глагол в главном предложении (такие как *said, told, asked, explained* и т.д.) стоит в прошедшем времени, то глагол в косвенной речи обычно «сдвигается» назад в прошлое. Также меняются указательные местоимения и обстоятельства времени.

<i>Прямая речь</i>	<i>Косвенная речь</i>
Present Simple "I work here ." "I want to see him now ."	Past Simple He said (that) he worked there . She / He said that she wanted to see him right away .
Present Continuous "I am reading a book." She said, "I am working tonight ."	Past Continuous She said she was reading a book. She said that she was working that night.
Present Perfect "I have finished." She said, "I have finished the task today ."	Past Perfect She said she had finished. She said that she had finished the task that day .
Past Simple "I bought a car." She said, "I found it out long ago (last week) ."	Past Perfect He said he had bought a car. She said that she had found it out long before (the previous week) .
Past Continuous "I was taking a shower at three yesterday ."	Past Perfect Continuous She said that she had been taking a shower at three the day before .
Future Simple "I'll send you a message tomorrow (next week) ."	Future-in-the-Past She said that she would send me a message the next / the following day (the next / the following week) .

Примечания:

Когда при согласовании в придаточном предложении время НЕ меняется:

— общеизвестные факты и универсальные истины

Прямая речь: *The teacher said, "Water **boils** at 100°C."*

Косвенная речь: *The teacher said that water **boils** at 100°C.* (Факт остается фактом, поэтому время Present Simple сохраняется).

— форма глагола, употребленного в придаточном предложении времени в прямой речи стоит в одном из прошедших времен

Прямая речь: *He said, "I met Tom **when I was walking through the park**."*

Косвенная речь: *He said that he had met Tom **when he was walking through the park**.* ("when he was walking through the park" — придаточное времени сохраняет форму Past Continuous).

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Transform the following sentences from direct speech into reported speech. Remember to change tenses, pronouns, and time expressions.

1. *Mary said, "I am feeling tired today."* → *Mary said that she was feeling tired that day.*
2. Tom said, "My parents are arriving tomorrow."
3. He said, "I have already seen this film."
4. She said, "I finished my work an hour ago."
5. They said, "We will call you next week."
6. John said, "I can't come to the party."
7. The chef said, "I cooked this dish specially for you."

Ex.2 Change the direct speech into reported speech.

I.

Situation: You are a journalist. You interview people and then report what you heard to your boss.

Task: Report what these people said.

Example: The inventor said, "My new device will save energy."

*Your report to the boss: **The inventor said (that) his new device would save energy.***

- 1) A famous actor said at the premiere, "I am working on a new project right now."
Your report: He said that...
- 2) Your friend told you a secret: "I can't tell you my secret."
You tell another friend (sharing the secret): He told me that...
- 3) The company director announced, "Our profits have increased this year."
Your report: He announced that...
- 4) She said, "I'll call you tomorrow."
You tell someone later: She said that...

II.

Situation: You are a detective. Witnesses are asking you questions. Write their questions in your notebook using reported speech.

Task: Change the witnesses' questions into reported speech.

Example: Witness №1 asked you: "Did you see the suspect?"

Notebook entry: He asked if I had seen the suspect.

- 1) Witness №2 asked: "Is the window broken?"
Notebook entry: She wondered whether...
- 2) Witness №3 asked you: "Where does the owner live?"
Notebook entry: He asked me...
- 3) Witness №4 wondered: "Why did they leave in a hurry?"
Notebook entry: She wondered...
- 4) Witness №5 asked: "What time will the police chief arrive?"
Notebook entry: He inquired...

III.

Situation: You are an office manager. Your boss gives you direct orders. You need to tell your team what to do, using reported speech.

Task: Tell your team what the boss said.

Example: The boss said to you, "Finish the report by 5 p.m."

You to your team: The boss told us to finish the report by 5 p.m.

- 1) The boss said, "Please, don't share this information with anyone."
You to your team: He asked us...
- 2) The boss said, "Send the client an email immediately!"
You to a colleague: He told me...
- 3) The boss said to you, "You should organize a meeting for tomorrow."
You to a colleague (later): The boss told me...

Ex.3 Choose the correct sentence (A or B).

- 1) Direct Speech: She asked, "Where is the station?"
A) She asked where was the station.
B) She asked where the station was.
Which one is correct? _____
- 2) Direct Speech: The teacher shouted, "Don't run in the corridor!"
A) The teacher shouted not to run in the corridor.

B) The teacher told to us not to run in the corridor.

Which one is correct? _____

3) Direct Speech: "I have finished my work," she said.

A) She said that she has finished her work.

B) She said that she had finished her work.

Which one is correct? _____

4) Direct Speech: "We were watching a film," they told me.

A) They told me that they had been watching a film.

B) They told me that they were watching a film.

Which one is correct? _____

5) Direct Speech: "He can speak French," she explained.

A) She explained that he could speak French.

B) She explained that he can speak French.

Which one is correct? _____

6) Direct Speech: "I will call you later," he promised.

A) He promised that he would call me later.

B) He promised that he will call me later.

Which one is correct? _____

7) Direct Speech: "I don't like this cake," the child said.

A) The child said that he didn't like this cake.

B) The child said that he didn't like that cake.

Which one is correct? _____

8) Direct Speech: "My sister is coming tomorrow," Anna mentioned.

A) Anna mentioned that her sister was coming the next day.

B) Anna mentioned that her sister was coming tomorrow.

Which one is correct? _____

9) Direct Speech: "I saw them here yesterday," he claimed.

A) He claimed that he had seen them there the day before.

B) He claimed that he saw us here yesterday.

Which one is correct? _____

10) Direct Speech: "Are you listening to me?" he asked.

A) He asked if I was listening to him.

B) He asked if I am listening to him.

Which one is correct? _____

Ex.4 Rewrite the sentences in reported speech. Pay special attention to the rules about general truths and time clauses. In some sentences, the tense should NOT be changed.

1) The scientist said, "The Earth revolves around the Sun."

The scientist said that _____.

2) She said, "I was reading a book when the phone rang."

She said that _____.

3) He explained, "Water freezes at zero degrees Celsius."

He explained that _____.

4) They told us, "We had already finished dinner when you called."

They told us that _____.

5) The guide mentioned, "The museum opens at 9 a.m."

The guide mentioned that _____.

6) She said, "I recognized him as soon as I saw him."

She said that _____.

7) My grandfather often says, "World War II ended in 1945."

My grandfather often says that _____.

Ex.5 Translate into English using reported speech.

1. Он сказал, что уже закончил свою работу. 2. Она спросила, будет ли дождь завтра. 3. Мама велела мне не забыть купить хлеб. 4. Директор поинтересовался, когда они закончат проект. 5. Она сказала мне, что придет на встречу. 6. Я спросил, что он делал вчера в 6 вечера. 7. Полицейский приказал нам остановиться. 8. Наш гид упомянул, что Великая Китайская стена является самым длинным сооружением в мире. 9. Он сказал, что узнал ее сразу, как только увидел. 10. Они интересуются, где живут самые богатые люди мира. 11. Она попросила меня помочь ей с домашним заданием. 12. Он сказал, что работает в этой компании с прошлого года. 13. Дети кричали, что видят корабль. 14. Я спросил, правда ли, что они поженились. 15. Она сказала, что будет ждать нас здесь.

PART IV.
VERBALS

Неличные формы
глагола

PART IV.
VERBALS.
THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERBS
Неличные формы глагола

Неличные формы глагола — это грамматические формы, которые называют действие, но не могут выступать в роли сказуемого в предложении, т.к. не имеют категории лица и числа. В английском языке выделяют три основные неличные формы глагола: инфинитив (The Infinitive), причастие (The Present participle / The Past participle) и герундий (The Gerund).

Неличные формы глагола сочетают свои глагольные свойства со свойствами других частей речи и выполняют в предложении их синтаксические функции:

To read is useful. = *Читать — полезно.* → инфинитив *to read* в функции подлежащего.

She was sitting at the table reading a book. = *Она сидела за столом, читая книгу.* → причастие *reading* в функции обстоятельства и т.д.

Неличные формы глагола имеют временные различия и выражают залог (активный и пассивный). Время, выраженное неличными формами, имеет относительное значение, а именно: неличные формы обычно выражают действие как одновременное, так и предшествующее по отношению к действию, выраженному глаголом-сказуемым в личной форме:

She enjoys writing letters. = *Ей нравится писать письма.* → действие, выраженное герундием *writing* происходит одновременно с действием глагола в личной форме *enjoys*.

Having written the letter, she went to bed. = *Написав письмо, она легла спать.* → действие, выраженное причастием *having written* предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме *went to bed*.

Unit 15. The Infinitive

Инфинитив

Инфинитив (Infinitive) — это неличная форма глагола, которая обычно называет действие, но не указывает на число, лицо и наклонение. Как и в русском языке, отвечает на вопросы «что делать?» или «что сделать?». Формальный признак инфинитива — частица *to* (*to eat, to sleep, to write*). Отрицательная форма инфинитива образуется при помощи частицы *not*, которая ставится перед инфинитивом, например:

Try not to be late! = *Постарайся не опаздывать!*

I decided not to go. = *Я решил не идти.*

Инфинитив может иметь при себе прямое дополнение (*to write letters* — писать письма; *to sing a song* — петь песню), определяться наречием (*to speak loudly* — говорить громко; *to walk quickly* — ходить быстро), иметь свои дополнения и обстоятельства (*He wants to try to finish the project today.* — Он хочет попытаться закончить проект сегодня).

Инфинитив не может самостоятельно выступать в качестве сказуемого в предложении, так как не изменяется по лицам и числам и не выражает время. Однако он часто входит в состав сложного глагольного сказуемого с глаголом-связкой *to be* или *модальным глаголом*, выполняя функцию дополнения или части смысловой конструкции, например: *I can speak French.* = *Я могу говорить на французском;* *Our task is to do our job well.* = *Наша задача — (с)делать работу хорошо.*

Формы инфинитива (The Infinitive Forms)

<i>Voice</i>	<i>Indefinite / Simple Infinitive</i>	<i>Continuous Infinitive</i>	<i>Perfect Infinitive</i>	<i>Perfect Continuous Infinitive</i>
Active	<i>to write</i>	<i>to be writing</i>	<i>to have written</i>	<i>to have been writing</i>
Passive	<i>to be written</i>	-----	<i>to have been written</i>	-----
	обозначает действие, одновременное с действием глагола сказуемого		обозначает действие, предшествующее глаголу-сказуемому	

Примечания:

- **Формы Indefinite Infinitive (to + V¹) / Continuous Infinitive (to be + V-ing) / Passive Indefinite Infinitive (to be + V³/ed)** обозначают действие одновременное с действием глагола-сказуемого и, таким образом, могут относиться к настоящему, прошлому или будущему:

I am glad to meet you. = Рада видеть тебя (→ одновременное действие со сказуемым в настоящем)

I was glad to see Mr. Paul. = Я был рад видеть мистера Пола. → одновременное действие со сказуемым в прошлом.

Mr. Smith will be glad to see you next Sunday. = Мистер Смит будет рад видеть вас в следующее воскресенье. → одновременное действие со сказуемым в будущем.

He seems to be working. = Кажется, он работает. → одновременное действие со сказуемым в настоящем.

It is so glorious to love and to be loved. = Так прекрасно любить и быть любимым. → одновременное действие со сказуемым в настоящем.

- Формы **Perfect Infinitive (to have + V³/ed) / Perfect Continuous Infinitive (to have been + V-ing)** обозначают действие, предшествующее действию, выраженному глаголом-сказуемым.

She claims to have seen him before. = Она утверждает, что видела его раньше.

She claims to have been working at this company for three years before her promotion. = Она утверждает, что проработала три года в этой компании до того, как её повысили.

The Bare Infinitive

Использование инфинитива без частицы «to»

Существует ряд случаев, когда перед инфинитивом **частица to опускается**. Такой инфинитив называют «чистый (голый) инфинитив» (*bare infinitive*):

<i>Infinitive без to</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
1. После модальных глаголов (<i>can, must, should, will, may, might, shall, could, would, dare</i>)	<i>She can swim.</i> <i>You must go.</i> <i>How dare you call me a liar?</i>	Она умеет плавать. Ты должен идти. Как посмел ты назвать меня лжецом?
2. После глаголов восприятия (<i>see, hear, watch, feel, notice</i>)	<i>I saw him leave the room.</i> <i>I felt my heart jump.</i>	Я видел, как он вышел из комнаты. Я почувствовал, как у меня ёкнуло сердце.
3. После глаголов let (позволять, давайте, пусть), make (в значении: заставлять), have (в значении: велеть / распорядиться)	<i>Let him go.</i> <i>She made me laugh.</i> <i>Have them complete the task.</i>	Пусть он идёт. Она заставила меня смеяться. Распорядитесь, чтобы они выполнили задание.

4. После выражений had better (лучше бы), would rather (бы, пожалуй), cannot but (не могу не)	<i>We'd better leave now if we want to catch the train. I would rather stay at home. I can't but think about it.</i>	Нам лучше уйти сейчас, если мы хотим успеть на поезд. Я бы, пожалуй, остался дома. Я не могу не думать об этом.
5. В предложениях, начинающихся с Why (not) (Почему бы (не ...))	<i>Why not try the new restaurant downtown? Why waste time on unimportant things?</i>	Почему бы вам не попробовать новый ресторан в центре города? Зачем тратить время на неважные вещи?
6. После слов than (чем), rather than (нежели), but (но не ...), except (кроме)	<i>She would rather read a book than watch TV. I prefer to stay at home rather than go out. I'll do anything but work with this person!</i>	Она бы скорее прочитала книгу, чем смотрела телевизор. Я предпочитаю остаться дома, нежели выйти на улицу. Я буду делать все, что угодно, но не работать с этим человеком!

Примечания:

* Если глаголы восприятия используются в Passive voice, за ними следует инфинитив с частицей **to** («to-infinitive»):

He was seen to cross the street and turn left. — Видели, что он перешёл улицу и свернул налево.

** Глагол *to be* после глагола *to feel* используется с частицей **to**:

I felt this to be the right decision. = Я почувствовал, что это правильное решение.

*** Если глагол "make" стоит в пассивном залоге, то за ним следует «to-infinitive»:

I was made to wash all the dishes. = Меня заставили вымыть всю посуду.

The Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence **Синтаксические функции инфинитива в предложении**

Инфинитив может выполнять в предложении следующие синтаксические функции:

Функция	Пример	Перевод
1. Подлежащее	<i>To skate is pleasant. To travel is my dream.</i>	<i>Кататься на коньках — приятно. Путешествовать — моя мечта.</i>

2. Часть составного именного сказуемого (<i>to be + Infinitive</i>)	<i>Our task is to do our job well.</i> <i>My dream is to become a doctor.</i>	Наша задача — (с)делать работу хорошо. Моя мечта — стать врачом.
3. Часть составного глагольного сказуемого (после модальных или смысловых глаголов (<i>want, start, begin, continue, try</i> и др.))	<i>I can translate this article without a dictionary.</i> <i>I want to read this book.</i>	Я могу перевести эту статью без словаря. Я хочу прочитать эту книгу.
4. Прямое дополнение	<i>He asked to change the tickets.</i> <i>They hope to win the game.</i>	Он попросил (о чем? что?) → поменять билеты. Они надеются (на что?) → выиграть игру.
5. Определение	<i>He had a great desire to travel.</i> <i>This is a book to read before bed.</i>	У него было огромное желание (какое? →) путешествовать. Это книга (какая? →), которую стоит читать перед сном.
6. Обстоятельство (цели* или результата**)	<i>He stopped to speak to Mary.</i> <i>He was too busy to see anyone.</i>	Он остановился (зачем, с какой целью? →) поговорить с Мэри. Он был настолько занят, (результат →) что никого не замечал.
7. Вводная конструкция (« <i>it is + adj + to...</i> »)	<i>It is hard to explain this.</i> <i>It is important to study regularly.</i>	Это трудно объяснить. Важно учиться регулярно.
8. Часть устойчивого выражения***	<i>To cut a long story short, the project failed.</i> <i>To put it briefly, she refused to help.</i>	Короче говоря, проект провалился. Вкратце: она отказалась помочь.

Примечания:

* В некоторых случаях инфинитив цели может вводиться союзами *in order (not) to (чтобы)*, *so as (not) to (для того чтобы)*, звучащими более формально.
She left early in order to catch the train. = Она ушла пораньше, → чтобы успеть на поезд.
They moved to the countryside so as to live a quieter life. = Они переехали в деревню, → чтобы жить спокойнее.

** Обстоятельство результата обычно используется с **too / enough**:

He was **too busy to see** anyone. = Он был настолько занят, (результат →) что никого не замечал.

She was **clever enough to admit** it. = Она была достаточно умна, (результат →) чтобы согласиться.

*** В качестве части устойчивого выражения инфинитив стоит в начале или конце предложения и всегда отделяется запятой.

Infinitive Constructions **Инфинитивные обороты**

Инфинитивные обороты часто употребляются вместо придаточных предложений с конструкциями:

Инфинитивная конструкция	Пример	Перевод
there is / there are (указывает на наличие чего-либо, что нужно или можно сделать)	<i>There is a letter to write.</i> <i>There are many problems to solve.</i>	Нужно написать письмо. (Есть письмо, которое нужно написать). Есть много проблем, которые нужно решить.
<i>There is + something + for someone + to do</i>	<i>There are instructions for them to follow.</i> <i>Is there any cake for me to try?</i>	Есть инструкции, которым они должны следовать. Есть ли торт, который я могу попробовать?
... have ... (указывает на наличие чего-то, что требует действия) <i>Someone has + something + to do</i>	<i>I have a secret to tell you.</i> <i>She has a decision to make.</i>	У меня есть секрет, который я хочу тебе рассказать. Ей нужно принять решение.
<i>Someone has + something + for someone + to do</i>	<i>He has a task for us to complete.</i> <i>I have a funny story for the children to hear.</i>	У него есть задание для нас (которое мы должны выполнить). У меня есть смешная история для детей (которую они должны услышать).
... to have something done (действие совершается не самим субъектом, а кем-то другим по его просьбе, заказу или указанию)	<i>I have my car washed every week.</i> <u>Сравните:</u> <i>I must cut my hair.</i> <i>I must have my hair cut.</i>	Я мою машину каждую неделю. (Но не сам, а кто-то другой, например, на автомойке). <u>Сравните:</u> <i>Мне нужно подстричься. (Я сделаю это сама.)</i> <i>Мне нужно подстричься. (Кто-то другой сделает это для меня.)</i>

<p>this is / these are / that was (используется, чтобы представить или охарактеризовать что-либо как подходящее для определенной цели)</p>	<p><i>This is an important rule to remember.</i></p> <p><i>These are not the words to use in polite company.</i></p>	<p>Это важное правило, которое стоит запомнить.</p> <p>Это не те слова, которые стоит использовать в приличном обществе.</p>
<p>...the first (second, last, ..., only)...+ infinitive</p>	<p><i>She was the first to leave.</i></p> <p><i>Mary was the last to arrive.</i></p>	<p>Она была первой, кто ушёл.</p> <p>Мэри была последней, кто приехал.</p>
<p>too + adjective + infinitive</p>	<p><i>Tom is too tired to play.</i></p> <p><i>The task is too difficult for me to do.</i></p>	<p>Том слишком устал, чтобы играть.</p> <p>Это задание слишком трудное для меня, чтобы сделать его.</p>
<p>adjective + enough + infinitive</p>	<p><i>This article is interesting enough to think.</i></p> <p><i>These topics are interesting enough to discuss.</i></p>	<p>Эта статья достаточно интересная для размышлений.</p> <p>Эти темы достаточно интересны, чтобы их обсудить.</p>

EXERCISES

Bare Infinitive

Ex.1 Open the brackets and choose the correct form of the infinitive (with to or without to).

1. My parents let me _____ (stay) out late on weekends.
2. She promised _____ (call) me as soon as she arrives.
3. I saw him _____ (cross) the street and enter the building.
4. We'd better _____ (hurry) if we don't want to miss the show.
5. He made me _____ (promise) not to tell anyone.
6. It's important _____ (study) regularly if you want to succeed.
7. Why _____ (wait) here? Let's go inside.
8. I would rather _____ (go) for a walk than watch TV.
9. They were seen _____ (argue) near the metro station.
10. I can't but _____ (feel) sorry for him.

Ex.2 Find and correct the mistakes in the use of the infinitive. Some sentences may be correct.

1. She can to play the piano very well.
2. Let him to speak for himself.
3. I heard her sing a beautiful song.
4. We are planning visit the museum tomorrow.
5. You should to check your work before handing it in.
6. I felt the temperature to drop suddenly.
7. Why not to take a break? You look tired.
8. He would rather to pay in cash.
9. They made me to clean the whole room.
10. My dream is to travel around the world.

Ex.3 Complete the sentences using the infinitive in the correct form. Use the verbs in brackets.

1. I don't want you _____ (see) me like this.
2. She advised me _____ (apply) for the new position.
3. Did you notice anyone _____ (leave) the office early yesterday?
4. You'd better _____ (not / tell) him the truth. It will upset him.
5. We expect _____ (finish) the project by Friday.
6. He was heard _____ (say) that he was resigning.
7. I will do everything but _____ (cook) dinner tonight.
8. How dare you _____ (open) my personal letters!
9. They hope _____ (visit) us next summer.
10. I would rather _____ (stay) in the car.

Ex.4 Complete the conversation between two friends, Alex and Ben, using the correct form of the verb (bare infinitive or to-infinitive).

Alex: I can't (**1. decide**) what to do for my vacation. I need (**2. choose**) between the mountains and the beach.

Ben: Well, would you rather (**3. spend**) your time hiking or swimming?

Alex: I'd prefer (**4. go**) to the beach. The sun makes me (**5. feel**) so relaxed.

Ben: That sounds nice. Why not (**6. book**) a flight to Spain? My sister let me (**7. use**) her discount code for a hotel there.

Alex: Really? That's great! But she made you (**8. promise**) to be responsible, right?

Ben: Yes, but I can't but (9. *recommend*) it. I saw her (10. *post*) amazing photos from there last year!

Ex.5 Translate the sentences into English, paying attention to the form of the infinitive.

1. Я не могу не смеяться, когда смотрю этот фильм. 2. Почему бы нам не прогуляться сегодня вечером? 3. Меня заставили подписать документ. 4. Она скорее предпочитает спать, чем гулять так поздно. 5. Мы видели, что он сел в машину и уехал. 6. Вы должны помочь им. 7. Нам лучше остаться дома. 8. Он решил не продавать квартиру. 9. Позвольте мне объяснить вам это правило. 10. Я лучше пойду в кино, чем останусь дома в субботу вечером.

Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence

Ex.6 Identify the syntactic function of the infinitive in the following sentences. Choose from the options:

Syntactic functions of the infinitive:

- A. Часть составного именного сказуемого
- B. Подлежащее
- C. Прямое дополнение
- D. Часть составного глагольного сказуемого
- E. Вводная конструкция (или безличная конструкция для конструкций с it)
- F. обстоятельство (цели или результата)
- G. Часть устойчивого выражения

1. ***To master a language*** requires patience and practice.
2. Her greatest wish is ***to travel the world***.
3. We decided ***to postpone the meeting***.
4. He bought a new computer ***to work more efficiently***.
5. This is the best way ***to solve the problem***.
6. ***To be honest***, I didn't enjoy the film at all.
7. It is exciting ***to explore new places***.
8. I didn't have enough time ***to finish the report***.
9. She promised ***to call me back*** in the evening.
10. He was too tired ***to concentrate***.

Ex.7 Underline the infinitive and define its function.

1. My advice is to accept their offer.
2. He went to the library to find some rare books.
3. To start with, let's look at the main facts.
4. She has a natural ability to calm people down.
5. They hope to arrive before dark.
6. It is impossible to complete this task in one day.
7. His plan was to save enough money for a new car.
8. We stopped to admire the beautiful view.
9. To say the least, his behavior was surprising.
10. I need to find a new apartment.

Infinitive Constructions

Ex.8 Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive constructions.

Example: She had many English books which she could read. → She had many English books to read.

1. I have no books which I can read.
2. Is there anybody who will help you with your spelling?
3. Don't forget that she has a baby which she must take care of.
4. There was nothing that he could do except go home.
5. I have only a few minutes in which I can explain these words to you.
6. I have an examination which I must take soon.
7. Here is a new brush which you will clean your teeth with.
8. Here are some more facts which will prove that your theory is correct.
10. Here are some tablets which will relieve your headache.

Ex.9 Rewrite the sentences using the structure to have something done.

Example: A professional is cleaning my apartment. → I am having my apartment cleaned.

1. A mechanic serviced my car last week.
.....
2. A tailor is going to alter my suit for the wedding.
.....
3. Someone steals his newspaper almost every morning.
.....

4. A dentist checks her teeth twice a year.
.....
5. Did a professional painter paint this portrait for you?
.....

Ex.10 Rewrite the sentences using the structure there is / there are... to...
Example: I must wash a lot of things. → There are a lot of things to wash.

1. You must read several reports before the meeting.
.....
2. We can visit many interesting places in this city.
.....
3. He must make one important phone call.
.....
4. They saw many monuments that they could admire.
.....

Ex.11 Rewrite the sentences using the structure have... to...
Example: I have a lot of work that I must do. → I have a lot of work to do.

1. She has some emails that she must answer.
.....
2. We have a problem that we must solve.
.....
3. He had a secret that he couldn't tell anyone.
.....
4. Do you have any homework that you need to finish?
.....

Ex.12 Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive constructions.

1. The garden needs to be watered. Could you do it? (Use “for + object + to-infinitive”)
.....
2. My computer is being repaired by a specialist right now. (Use “have something done”)
.....
3. This is a box where we can keep the old photos. (Use “This is... to...”)
.....
4. I need to pay several bills. (Use “There are...”)
.....

Ex.13 *Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive construction too + adjective + infinitive.*

Example: He was so weak that it was difficult for him to walk. → He is too weak to walk.

1. The weather is so bad that we won't go to the country.
.....
2. The article is so difficult that he can't translate it.
.....
3. The day is so hot that it is impossible to stay in town.
.....
4. The dress is so expensive that it can't be worn every day.
.....
5. The mountain is so high that you won't be able to climb it.
.....

Ex.14 *Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive construction adjective + enough + infinitive.*

Example: The bag was heavy and she couldn't lift it. → The bag was heavy enough to lift.

1. The rule was difficult. The child could hardly understand it.
.....
2. The car is expensive. I can't buy it.
.....
3. The house is small. Such a big family can't live in it.
.....
4. The shoes are tight. The child can't wear them.
.....
5. The passage is difficult. It can hardly be learned by heart.
.....

Ex.15 *Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive construction adjective + enough + infinitive.*

Example: The box was so heavy that I couldn't carry it (not light). → The box wasn't light enough for me to carry.

1. The water was so cold that we couldn't swim in it (not warm)
.....
2. He was so tired that he couldn't watch the movie (not awake)
.....

3. This film is so boring that I can't watch it (not interesting)
4. She was so nervous that she couldn't speak (not calm)
5. The top shelf is so high that I can't reach it (not low)
6. The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it (not cool)

***Ex.16* Rephrase the following sentences using the infinitive construction **the first / second / last / only...** + Infinitive.**

*Example: She was **the first person who left the party.** → She was **the first to leave the party.***

1. He is the only person who can solve this problem
2. Our company was the one that introduced this technology to the market
3. She was the last person who spoke at the conference
4. Who was the person who arrived first?
5. He is one of the greatest scientists who has ever lived
6. I am usually the last person who realizes what is happening
7. This was the best book that was written by this author
8. She was the only student who passed the difficult exam
9. They were the next team that played in the tournament
10. Napoleon was a general who wanted to conquer Europe

Infinitive Forms

***Ex.17* Translate the sentences into Russian, paying special attention to the forms of the infinitive.**

1. The children want to watch a cartoon.
2. This letter needs to be sent immediately.

3. She didn't expect to see him there.
4. The manager asked to be informed about any changes.
5. It's easy to solve this problem.

Ex.18 Translate the sentences into Russian, paying special attention to the forms of the infinitive.

1. He was happy to have passed the exam.
2. The document appeared to have been signed before the meeting.
3. I'm sorry to have interrupted you.
4. The house seemed to have been abandoned years ago.
5. She claimed to have finished the report.

Ex.19 Translate the sentences into Russian paying special attention to the forms of the infinitive.

1. I am glad to have met you.
2. He wanted to be told the truth.
3. The child didn't like to be left alone.
4. I didn't expect to have finished the work so early.
5. The book is too difficult to be read in one evening.
6. She is proud to have been chosen for the team.

Ex.20 Replace the highlighted parts with infinitive constructions.

Example: We were glad that we met him. → We were glad to meet him.

1. I was surprised when I found her at home.
2. She is happy that she is here with us.....
3. He was afraid when he asked the difficult question.....
4. We are ready and we can start the presentation.....
5. It is important that someone does this work carefully.....

Ex.21 Replace the highlighted parts with infinitive constructions.

Example: He is sorry that he has said it. → He is sorry to have said it.

1. She seemed to be sad because she had lost her favourite book.....
2. I am glad that I have met you.....
3. He was disappointed that he had missed the concert.....
4. The children were excited that they had visited a real castle.....
5. The author is proud that he has written this novel.....

Ex.22 Replace the highlighted parts with passive infinitive constructions.

Example: It is important **that someone does this work carefully**. → It is important **for this work to be done carefully**.

1. The children expected *that someone would praise them*.
2. I want *someone to deliver the package tomorrow*.
3. It is necessary *that someone washes these clothes*.
4. She was happy *that they had invited her to the party*.
5. The manager asked *that the documents should be signed immediately*.
6. The house appears *that someone has abandoned it*.
7. He didn't expect *that they would choose him for this role*.

Ex.23 Choose the correct form of the infinitive.

1. He seems (*to read / to be reading / to have read*) something very interesting right now.
2. I'm happy (*to meet / to be meeting / to have met*) you at last!
3. The children were lucky (*to find / to have found*) that treasure on the beach.
4. She pretended (*to sleep / to be sleeping*) when I entered the room.
5. He claims (*to be / to have been*) the best student in his class last year.
6. I didn't expect the work (*to finish / to be finished*) so quickly.
7. They seem (*to discuss / to be discussing / to have been discussing*) this problem for hours.

Ex.24 Choose the correct form of the infinitive.

1. The book is said (*to be written / to have been written*) in the 16th century.
2. I'm glad (*to hear / to be hearing*) this news from you.
3. She seems (*to work / to have been working*) on this project all week.
4. He wanted (*to invite / to be invited*) to the party.
5. The weather appears (*to improve / to be improving*) now.
6. I don't remember (*to tell / to have told*) you about this incident.
7. The house needs (*to repair / to be repaired*).
8. They are happy (*to complete / to have completed*) the task ahead of schedule.

Ex.25 Open the brackets using the correct infinitive form.

- I. The Writer
 1. She seems (*to write*) a new novel every year.
 2. Look at her! She seems (*to write*) something very intensively at the moment.

3. She seems (to write) this chapter for three weeks already.
4. She seems (to write) the final page of her manuscript.

II. The Manager

1. He appears (to manage) a large team.
2. He appears (to manage) the current crisis very professionally.
3. He appears (to manage) this project from its very start.
4. He appears (to manage) to solve all the problems before the deadline.

III. The Student

1. He is happy (to study) at this university.
2. He is happy (to study) in the library right now.
3. He is happy (to study) here for the past five years.
4. He is happy (to pass) all his exams with excellent grades.

IV. The House

1. The old house seems (to construct) in the 19th century.
2. The new house seems (to construct) by skilled workers at the moment.
3. The old house seems (to construct) with unique architectural elements.
4. The new house seems (to construct) from high-quality materials.

Ex.26 Open the brackets using the correct infinitive form.

The Scientist's Discovery

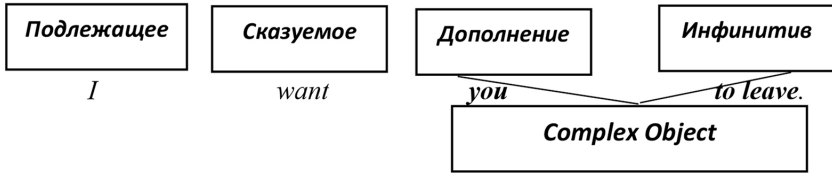
Dr. Evans was thrilled (to be) part of the expedition. He hoped (to find) something extraordinary and he did. The artifact seemed (to bury) in the sand for centuries. He was proud (to work) with such a professional team. The old book appeared (to damage) by time and weather. Dr. Evans claimed (to recognize) the ancient symbols already. The team was happy (to complete) the main stage of their work. The young scientist promised (to continue) the research next year.

Ex.27 Translate from Russian into English paying special attention to the forms of the infinitive.

1. Она рада, что отдыхает сейчас. 2. Он счастлив, что закончил этот проект. 3. Мне нравится, когда меня приглашают на вечеринки. 4. Он хочет, чтобы его уважали. 5. Я счастлив, что работаю здесь. 6. Она надеется закончить проект завтра. 7. Мне нужно, чтобы этот отчет проверили. 8. Я помню, что когда-то встречал этого человека. 9. Ребенок не любит, когда его оставляют одного. 10. Она надеется, что будет работать в этой компании в следующем году.

Unit 16. The Infinitive Constructions: Complex Object

Инфинитивные конструкции: Сложное дополнение



Complex Object — это синтаксическая конструкция, в которой дополнение (объект) выражается сочетанием существительного или местоимения в объектной форме и инфинитива (или причастия), образующих единое смысловое целое. Данная конструкция широко используется, когда говорящий пытается влиять на действие, совершаемое другим лицом или объектом.

*I want **him to help me.*** = Я хочу, чтобы он помог мне.

*We expect **the passengers to be informed** (passive infinitive).* = Мы полагаем, пассажиров поставят в известность.

*They believed **her to have sold her house and left.*** = Они думали, что она продала дом и уехала.

*They claimed **the ring to have been stolen** last year.* = Они утверждали, что кольцо было украдено в прошлом году.

Инфинитив в этой конструкции может быть представлен в разных грамматических формах (Indefinite Infinitive, Perfect Infinitive, Continuous Infinitive) и залогах (Active voice / Passive voice).

*Личные местоимения в инфинитивной конструкции Complex Object используются в объектном падеже:

Pronouns	
Nominative case (Именительный)	Objective case (Объектный)
<i>I</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>he</i>	<i>him</i>
<i>she</i>	<i>her</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>it</i>
<i>we</i>	<i>us</i>
<i>you</i>	<i>you</i>
<i>they</i>	<i>them</i>

Инфинитивная конструкция *Complex Object* часто используется после глаголов, выражающих:

<i>verb + (to)Infinitive</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
чувственное восприятие (<i>to hear, to see, to watch, to notice, to observe, to feel</i> и др.)*	<i>I haven't <u>heard</u> anyone call me.</i> <i>I <u>saw</u> Brown enter the room.</i>	<i>Я не слышал, чтобы кто-нибудь звал меня.</i> <i>Я видел, как Браун вошёл в комнату.</i>
умственную деятельность (<i>to know, to think, to consider, to believe, to expect, to suppose, to find</i> и др.) to be + Infinitive**	<i>We believe him to be honest. =</i> <i>They thought the theory to be incorrect.</i>	<i>Мы верим, что он честный (Мы верим в его честность).</i> <i>Они считали, что теория неверна.</i>
чувства и эмоции (<i>to like, to dislike, to love, to hate, cannot bear</i>)	<i>He loves her to sing for him in the evenings.</i> <i>She cannot bear him to be late.</i>	<i>Он любит, когда она поёт ему по вечерам.</i> <i>Она не выносит, когда он опаздывает.</i>
желания и намерения (<i>to want, to wish, to desire, to mean</i> (в значении — намереваться, рассчитывать на что-либо), <i>to intend, would like / love</i> и др.)	<i>I want you to come and dine with me.</i> <i>I did not mean you to learn this poem by heart.</i>	<i>Я хочу, чтобы вы пришли пообедать со мной.</i> <i>Я не имел в виду, чтобы вы выучили это стихотворение наизусть.</i>
принуждение, побуждение к действию (to make cause (в значении: заставлять, распорядиться), to have (заставлять, поручать что-либо сделать / распорядиться о чем-либо), to get (добиваться), to order (приказать), to forbid (запрещать), to ask (просить), to suffer (позволять / неохотно разрешать) и др.)	<i>She made him apologize.</i> <i>He was made to apologize.</i> <i>She had the gardener trim the bushes.</i> <i>We got them to agree to the terms.</i> <i>They ordered him to leave immediately.</i>	<i>Она заставила его извиниться.</i> <i>Его заставили извиниться (Если глагол to make стоит в пассиве — используется to-infinitive).</i> <i>Она велела садовнику подстричь кусты (используется с Bare infinitive (без to)).</i> <i>Мы добились их согласия с условиями.</i> <i>Им приказали немедленно уйти.</i>
заявления, сообщения, утверждения (<i>to pronounce, to declare, to report, to state</i> и др.)	<i>The doctor pronounced the wound to be a slight one.</i> <i>They declared him to be guilty.</i>	<i>Врач сказал, что рана легкая.</i> <i>Они объявили его виновным.</i>

Примечания:

*После глаголов восприятия обычно используется инфинитив без to (Bare infinitive) в активном залоге (Indefinite Infinitive Active) или причастие (Participle I/II):

*I saw Jane **cross** the street.* = Я видела, как Джейн перешла улицу (*Indefinite Infinitive Active* — завершённое или целостное действие).

*I saw Jane **crossing** the street.* = Я видела, как Джейн переходила улицу (*Participle I* — действие в процессе, акцент на длительности).

*We saw the car **damaged**.* = Мы увидели машину повреждённой (*Participle II* — пассивное действие (над объектом)).

Инфинитив используется для описания действий, завершённых в момент их восприятия, в то время как причастие настоящего времени *Participle I* включается в состав сложного дополнения, когда речь идёт о действиях, продолжающихся в момент их восприятия. Говорящий подчёркивает, что наблюдал этот процесс в отдельно взятый момент времени и не видел его завершения. *Participle II* обычно используется, когда говорящий делает акцент на результате или состоянии, а не на процессе.

После глаголов *to see*, *to notice* не используется объектный инфинитивный оборот с глаголом *to be*. В этом случае также используется придаточное предложение:

*I noticed him **be** pale.* → *I noticed that he was pale.* = Я заметил, что он был бледный.

*We noticed the door **be** open.* → *We noticed that the door was open.* = Мы заметили, что дверь была открыта.

** В разговорной или неформальной речи *to be* часто опускается с глаголами *to think*, *to consider*, *to find*, особенно перед прилагательными или существительными:

I think them (to be) right. = Я думаю, что они правы.

I don't consider him (to be) an honest person. — Я не считаю его честным человеком.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Translate the following sentences into Russian, paying special attention to the translation of the Complex Object infinitive construction (noun/pronoun + infinitive).

1. The company expects its employees to follow the new policy. 2. I never wanted you to find out the truth this way. 3. The general commanded his troops to advance at dawn. 4. We saw him leave the building in a hurry. 5. I could hear the rain pounding against the windowpane. 6. Nobody noticed the client being escorted out of the back door. 7. Everyone considered him to be a genius in his

field. 8. I believe her to have told us everything she knew. 9. The archaeologists estimate the artifact to have been created around 1000 BC. 10. We all supposed them to be enjoying their vacation in Spain.

Ex.2 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Remember that after verbs of perception (see, hear, watch, etc.) and the verb “let” we use the infinitive without “to”.

1. We didn't hear the neighbour _____ (leave) the house.
2. My parents want me _____ (call) them every week.
3. I saw him _____ (cross) the street and _____ (disappear) in the crowd.
4. The teacher expected the students _____ (finish) the test on time.
5. Let me _____ (help) you with your luggage.
6. Nobody noticed the manager _____ (enter) the room.
7. She would like her children _____ (learn) a foreign language.
8. I watched the mechanic _____ (repair) my car; he made it look so easy.
9. The court ordered the company _____ (pay) a large fine.
10. We believe this discovery _____ (be) extremely important for science.
11. I felt the cold wind _____ (blow) on my face.
12. They consider this artist _____ (be) the most talented of his generation.

Ex.3 Complete the sentences using the Complex Object structure. Choose the correct pronoun from the options in brackets.

*Example: They want _____ to help. (she) → They want **her** to help.*

1. I didn't hear _____ say that. (he)
2. She expects _____ to be on time. (we)
3. The teacher watched _____ solve the problem. (they)
4. My parents would like _____ to become a lawyer. (I)
5. Let _____ try one more time. (she)
6. We saw _____ arguing in the street. (he and she)
7. The news made _____ feel anxious. (we)
8. Do you want _____ to call you back later? (I)
9. I noticed _____ waiting outside. (she)
10. His story caused _____ to reconsider our decision. (we)
11. Nobody expected _____ to win the competition. (she)
12. They allowed _____ to use their library. (we)

Ex.4 Open the brackets, choosing between the Bare Infinitive (without “to”) or the Present Participle. Explain your choice based on the rule (a complete action vs. an action in progress).

1. I watched the old man (paint) the fence. He was slow but very thorough.
2. We heard the window (shut) because of the strong wind.
3. She saw her friend (wait) for the bus at the corner.
4. They found the room (clean) and tidy.
5. I didn't notice you (raise) your hand. Did you have a question?

Ex.5 Rephrase the sentences using the Complex Object construction where possible. If the use of the Complex Object contradicts the rules (the verb is used in a figurative meaning, the verb to be is used), replace it with a subordinate clause.

1. I saw that he was nervous.
2. They heard that the famous artist was giving a lecture in the main hall.
3. I noticed that the document was signed.
4. We saw that the plane landed safely on the runway.
5. I saw that his decision was final.

Ex.6 Replace the following sentences or groups of sentences with one simple sentence using the Complex Object. Use the prompts in brackets. Follow the model.

Model: I looked out of the window. He crossed the street. (see) → I saw him cross the street.

Part A: Verbs of Perception (see, hear, watch, notice, feel)

1. I was in the room. The children played in the garden. I observed this for some time. (watch)
2. She was lying in bed. The wind howled in the chimney. She could hear it. (hear)
3. I turned around quickly. A man opened the door of the office and went in. I caught a glimpse of this. (see)
4. He was holding the snake. It moved in his hands. He could sense it. (feel)

Part B: Verbs of Desire and Want (want, would like, desire)

1. It is my wish. You should come to my party. (want)
2. It is her strong desire. Her son becomes a doctor. (would like)

3. The company requires this. All applicants must have experience. (desire)
4. I really wish for this. My plans will be approved. (want)

Part C: Verbs of Expectation and Opinion (*expect, believe, consider, suppose*)

1. Everyone thinks that he is a reliable person. (consider)
2. The manager anticipates that the team will finish the project by Friday. (expect)
3. The scientists hold the opinion that this theory is correct. (believe)

Part D: Verbs of Command and Permission (*order, allow, let, make*)

1. The commander gave an order. The soldiers had to retreat. (order)
2. His jokes were so funny. They caused us to laugh uncontrollably. (make)
3. My parents gave me permission. I can stay out late tonight. (allow)
4. She gave him permission. He could use her car for the weekend. (let)
5. The teacher forced the students. The students had to rewrite their essays. (make)

Ex. 7 Complete each sentence using a verb from the list below. Use each verb only once. Pay attention to the context to choose the correct one.

Verb List: *want, let, expect, hear, watch, make, see, advise, allow, consider*

1. From my window, I could _____ our neighbors arguing.
2. I really _____ you to think carefully about this offer.
3. My parents won't _____ me go to the festival alone.
4. The coach _____ the players to be at the training session at 8 a.m. sharp.
5. The funny movie _____ us laugh all through the show.
6. We stood there and _____ the children play in the park.
7. The doctor _____ her patient to get more rest.
8. Do you _____ me to help you with your homework?
9. Many experts _____ him to be the best footballer of his generation.
10. The security guard didn't _____ anyone enter the building without a pass.

Ex.8 Rewrite the following sentences, replacing the subordinate clause (starting with that, who, what or which) with a simpler sentence using the Complex Object structure (Noun/Pronoun + Infinitive). Use the prompt in brackets where possible.

Model: I know that he is a reliable person. (consider) → I consider him to be a reliable person.

1. The teacher insisted that the students should be quiet.
2. We all heard how they were arguing all night.
3. The court has decided that the company must pay the fine. (order)
4. I believe that she is the most talented singer in the country. (consider)
5. She saw that a man was trying to break into the car.
6. The government expects that all citizens will obey the law.
7. The evidence suggests that the suspect was lying. (prove)
8. My parents would prefer it if I studied medicine. (like)
9. The detective noticed that someone had forced the lock.
10. The manager said that the meeting should start without him. (want)

Ex.9 Translate the following sentences from Russian into English. Use the constructions.

let somebody do something

make somebody do something

have somebody do something

1. Мама не разрешает мне гулять допоздна. 2. Его грустная история заставила нас плакать. 3. Я распоряжусь, чтобы мой секретарь отправил эти документы завтра утром. 4. Почему ты не позволяешь своим детям играть здесь? 5. Начальник заставил всех сотрудников работать сверхурочно. 6. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь отправил эти письма. 7. Не заставляй меня ждать! 8. Её шутки всегда заставляют меня смеяться. 9. Он разрешил им использовать свой бассейн. 10. Я только что распорядился, чтобы курьер доставил вам пакет документов.

Ex.10 Translate the following sentences from Russian into English. Use the Complex Object construction and the verb provided in the Verb List.

Verb List: require, ask, forbid, force, suffer, urge, get, order, permit, persuade

1. Суд вынудил компанию заплатить огромный штраф. 2. Как вы добились, чтобы он извинился? 3. Генерал приказал войскам отступить. 4. Правила запрещают пассажирам пользоваться мобильными телефонами во время

взлёта. 5. Работа требует, чтобы я часто ездил в командировки. 6. Старый профессор неохотно разрешал студентам пользоваться конспектами на экзамене. 7. Погода позволила нам провести мероприятие на улице. 8. Врач настоятельно рекомендовал пациенту бросить курить. 9. Я убедил их пересмотреть своё решение. 10. Я попросил коллегу подменить меня (to cover) на совещании.

REVISION (Complex Object)

Ex.1 Choose the correct option to complete each sentence.

1. I didn't hear _____ say anything.
a) he b) his c) him d) himself
2. The manager wants _____ the report by Friday.
a) me to finish b) me finish c) I to finish d) I finish
3. We stood at the window and watched the children _____ the new game from start to finish.
a) to play b) played c) play d) playing
4. She would like _____ to her party.
a) that we come b) we come c) us to come d) our coming
5. The news made _____ immediately.
a) him to react b) him react c) he react d) he to react
6. I consider _____ my best friend.
a) she to be b) her to be c) her be d) she be
7. They noticed _____ tired.
a) that he was b) him be c) him to be d) he was
8. The teacher doesn't allow _____ dictionaries during the test.
a) students use b) that students use c) students using d) students to use

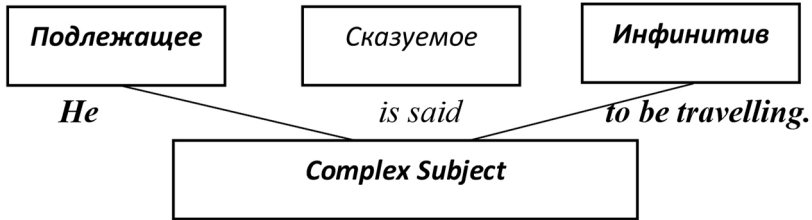
9. We expect _____ here by 8 o'clock.
a) them to be b) them be c) they to be d) they be
10. I saw the letter _____ and sent.
a) to type b) typed c) type d) typing
11. He persuaded _____ with him.
a) that I go b) me to go c) me go d) I to go
12. They believed _____ the house before moving abroad.
a) her to sell b) her to have sold c) that she to sell d) she to have sold
13. Let _____ you with those heavy bags.
a) I to help b) me to help c) I help d) me help
14. The detective proved the suspect _____ at the crime scene.
a) to be b) been c) to have been d) being
15. I could feel the temperature _____ rapidly as we climbed the mountain.
a) get b) to get c) getting d) got

Ex.2 Translate the sentences from Russian into English using the Complex object.

1. Я видел, как он пересёк дорогу в неполюженном месте. 2. Я знаю, что она работала здесь раньше. 3. Врач настоятельно рекомендовал ей больше отдыхать. 4. Мы слышали, как она играла на пианино всю вечеринку. 5. Я добился того, чтобы они изменили решение. 6. Все считают его приятным человеком. 7. Мы ожидаем, что они придут завтра утром. 8. Она почувствовала, как её рука дрожала. 9. Новости заставили её немедленно уехать. 10. Я заметил, что дверь была открыта. 11. Я полагаю, что этот документ был подписан в прошлом месяце. 12. Все наблюдали, как самолёт приземляется. 13. Они сочли её версию событий правдивой. 14. Я хочу, чтобы ты рассказал мне правду. 15. Он ненавидит, когда его перебивают. 16. Мы бы очень хотели, чтобы вы посетили нашу новую квартиру. 17. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы она была здесь сейчас. 18. Я не выношу, когда они спорят по пустякам. 19. Босс заставил его работать все выходные. 20. Родители разрешили нам пойти на этот концерт.

Unit 17. The Subjective Infinitive Construction: Complex Subject

Инфинитивные конструкции: Сложное подлежащее



Complex Subject — это синтаксическая конструкция, состоящая из подлежащего, выраженного существительным или местоимением (в именительном падеже) и инфинитива, стоящего после глагола, выполняющего функцию сказуемого в предложении.

Например: *He is said to be travelling.* = *Говорят, он путешествует.*

В этом предложении подлежащее, выраженное местоимением «**He**» и инфинитив «**to be travelling**» связаны определёнными смысловыми отношениями (лицу, обозначенному местоимением «**He**», приписывается действие «**to be travelling**») и образуют семантическое единство. Именно поэтому эта инфинитивная конструкция и называется «сложное подлежащее».

Глагол-сказуемое «**is said**» служит связующим элементом между подлежащим и инфинитивной частью конструкции. Он позволяет сделать акцент на действующем лице (подлежащем), а не на источнике высказывания и играет ключевую грамматическую роль в структуре.

Глагол-сказуемое может стоять как в пассивном залоге (*is said, is known, are expected, was supposed* и др.), так и в активном залоге (*seem, appear, happen, chance, turn out, prove*), согласуется с подлежащим по числу и лицу (*he* → *is*, *they* → *are* и т.д.), и определяет время всего предложения.

Предложения с конструкцией **Complex Subject** в английском языке обычно переводятся на русский язык с помощью таких оборотов, как «говорят, сообщается, думают, видели, слышали, оказалось, случилось» и т.п.:

She is said to be a writer. = *Говорят, что она писатель (Present Simple).*

He was believed to be guilty. = *Считалось, что он виновен (Past Simple).*

He will be considered to be the best candidate. = *Его будут считать лучшим кандидатом (Future Simple).*

He has been reported to be late. = Сообщили, что он опаздывает (Present Perfect).

Инфинитив в составе сложного подлежащего может уточнять временные отношения (действие инфинитива происходит одновременно с действием глагола-сказуемого, либо предшествует ему), но не выражать грамматическое время. В описываемой конструкции инфинитив употребляется во всех своих шести формах:

Tense	Voice			
	Active		Passive	
Одновременное действие				
Indefinite / Simple	<i>She seems to know the answer.</i>	<i>Кажется, она знает ответ.</i>	<i>The work was reported to be done.</i>	<i>Сообщили, что работа сделана.</i>
Continuous	<i>He is said to be travelling now.</i>	<i>Говорят, что он путешествует сейчас</i>	—————	
Предшествующее действие				
Perfect	<i>They are supposed to have finished the construction.</i>	<i>Предполагается, что они уже закончили строительство.</i>	<i>The document is likely to have been signed this morning.</i>	<i>Вероятно, документ был подписан сегодня утром.</i>
Perfect Continuous	<i>He is said to have been travelling for a long time.</i>	<i>Говорят, что он путешествовал долгое время.</i>	—————	

Инфинитивная конструкция **Complex Subject** используется в пассивном залоге со следующими группами глаголов:

<i>verb + to-Infinitive</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
— глаголы, выражающие восприятие (<i>to see, to hear, to notice, to watch</i> и др.)*	<i>The car was seen to disappear in the distance.</i> <i>The door was heard to open suddenly.</i>	<i>Видели, как машина скрылась вдали.</i> <i>Было слышно, как дверь внезапно открылась.</i>
— глаголы, выражающие умственную деятельность (<i>to think, to know, to believe, to consider, to expect, to suppose</i>)	<i>They are thought to live abroad.</i> <i>The train is expected to arrive soon.</i>	<i>Думают, что они живут за границей.</i> <i>Ожидается, что поезд скоро прибудет.</i>

— глаголы, передающие речевые высказывания, заявления, объявления (to say, to report, to state, to announce)	<i>He is said to be a good doctor.</i> <i>He is stated to have broken the rules.</i>	Говорят, что он хороший врач. Утверждается, что он нарушил правила.
— с глаголом to make (в значении «заставлять»)*	<i>He was made to work on the project.</i>	Его заставили работать над этим проектом.

Примечания:

* После глагола **make** и глаголов восприятия (**to see, to hear, to notice, to watch**) в активном залоге обычно используется Bare infinitive (инфинитив без to). Если эти глаголы стоят в пассивном залоге, мы используем to-infinitive (инфинитив с частицей to). Сравните: She **made** him **answer** the question. = Она заставила его повторить предложение (*made* стоит в активном залоге → инфинитив без to → answer). He **was made to answer** the question. = Его заставили повторить предложение (*was made* стоит в пассивном залоге → to-infinitive → to answer).

Инфинитивная конструкция **Complex Subject** используется в активном залоге со следующими группами глаголов:

verb + to-Infinitive	Пример	Перевод
to seem	<i>He seems to be a good specialist.</i> <i>They seemed to have forgotten about the meeting.</i>	Кажется , он хороший специалист. Казалось , они забыли о встрече.
to appear	<i>She appears to be very confident.</i> <i>The document appears to have been signed yesterday.</i>	Создается впечатление , что она очень уверена в себе. Похуже , документ был подписан вчера.
to prove	<i>He proved to be a doctor.</i> <i>The theory has proved (to be) correct.</i>	Он оказался врачом. Теория оказалась верной.
to happen	<i>I happened to meet her in the supermarket.</i> <i>If you happen to see Tom, ask him to call me.</i>	Так получилось , что я встретил ее в супермаркете. Если ты случайно увидишь Тома, попроси его позвонить мне.
to chance	<i>I chanced to be passing by, so I dropped in.</i> <i>He chanced to see the accident.</i>	Мне случилось проходить мимо, так что я зашел. Так вышло , что он увидел аварию.
to turn out	<i>The day turned out to be wonderful.</i> <i>He turned out to be a friend of my brother's.</i>	День оказался замечательным. Оказалось , что он друг моего брата.

Примечания:

* Отрицательные формы глаголов *seem, appear, happen, chance, turn out, prove* образуются с помощью вспомогательных глаголов «*do/does/did + not (seem) + to-infinitive*» или «*seem / happen / appear / turn out + not + to-infinitive*», например: *He seems not to understand the rules.* = Кажется, он не понимает правила. *He doesn't seem to understand the problem.* = Кажется, он не понимает проблему. *She did not seem to know what was happening.* = Она, похоже, не знала, что происходит.

** После глагола *to prove* глагол-связка *to be* часто опускается, когда за ним следует прилагательное или существительное с прилагательным, например: *She proved (to be) very clever.* → Она оказалась очень умной.

*** Перед глаголами *to seem, to appear, to prove, to happen* иногда стоит вводное наречие **there**:

There appears to be a problem with the data. → Создается впечатление, что с данными есть проблема. / Кажется, есть проблема с данными.

The meeting was long, but there proved to be a great benefit in it. → Встреча была долгой, но в ней оказалась огромная польза.

We needed a key, and there happened to be one under the mat. → Нам нужен был ключ, и так вышло, что он лежал под ковриком.

There seems to be a misunderstanding. → Кажется, существует недопонимание. / Похоже, произошло недопонимание.

Инфинитивная конструкция **Complex Subject** с прилагательными **likely, unlikely, certain, sure**:

<i>verb + to-Infinitive</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
<i>to be likely</i>	<i>He is likely to win the competition.</i>	Вероятно , он выиграет соревнование. / Он, вероятно , выиграет.
<i>to be unlikely</i>	<i>She is unlikely to agree with our proposal.</i>	Маловероятно , что она согласится с нашим предложением.
<i>to be certain</i>	<i>They are certain to win; their advantage is too big.</i>	Они несомненно выиграют; их преимущество слишком велико.
<i>to be sure</i>	<i>The new policy is sure to cause a lot of discussion.</i>	Новая политика наверняка вызовет много дискуссий.

Примечания:

*В отрицательных предложениях частица **not** стоит при сказуемом, выраженном прилагательным **to be likely**, а не при инфинитиве:

He is not likely to come to-day. → Он, **вероятно**, не придет сегодня.

Однако при сказуемом, выраженном прилагательными **to be certain** и **to be sure**, частица **not** стоит при инфинитиве:

*He is sure **not to forget** this day. → Он **определенно не забудет** этот день. If you don't invite him, he is **certain not to come**. → Если ты его не пригласишь, он **точно не придет**.*

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Translate the sentences from English into Russian, paying attention to the Complex Subject.

1. He was seen to enter the building through the back door. 2. The new film is considered to be a masterpiece by many critics. 3. She is said to have learned Japanese in just one year. 4. The children were made to clean their rooms before going out. 5. Our team is likely to face strong competition in the finals. 6. The suspect was reported to be hiding in the forest. 7. He is known to have been working here since 2010. 8. The concert is announced to start at 8 p.m. sharp. 9. She is unlikely to agree with your proposal. 10. The old bridge was heard to collapse with a loud roar. 11. They are believed to have been married for over fifty years. 12. The students were made to rewrite the test. 13. The company is expected to release a new product soon. 14. He is sure to be surprised by the news. 15. The manuscript is thought to have been lost during the war.

Ex.2 Read the sentences and identify which of them use the Complex Subject construction.

1. They are known to be the best team in the league.
2. She wants him to come back.
3. The weather seems to be improving.
4. I saw him crossing the street.
5. He is considered to be a genius.
6. It happened to rain on our wedding day.
7. We expect them to arrive by noon.
8. The book was found to contain many errors.

Ex.3 Paraphrase the sentences using the Complex Subject construction and the verb in brackets.

Example: It is thought that he lives in London. → He is thought to live in London.

1. It seems that she is very tired.
2. It is known that they are rich.

3. It was reported that the plane had landed safely.
4. It happened that I met your brother at the concert.
5. It appears that you have made a mistake.
6. It is expected that the president will give a speech.

Ex.4 Translate the sentences into Russian, paying special attention to the rendering of negation.

1. He is not supposed to be here.
2. The problem seems not to have been solved.
3. I didn't happen to have any cash with me.
4. The results are not considered to be reliable.
5. She was never known to complain.

Ex.5 Paraphrase the sentences using the Complex Subject construction.

I. Example: It is not believed that he is guilty. → He is believed not to be guilty.

1. It is not thought that she lives here anymore.
2. It was not expected that the meeting would be so long.
3. It is not considered that this theory is correct.
4. It was not reported that there were any casualties.

II. Example: I think he doesn't have any money. (seem) → He doesn't seem to have any money.

1. I think she isn't listening. (appear)
2. It so happened that I didn't see the message. (happen)
3. I think they don't know each other. (seem)
4. In the end, the method wasn't effective. (prove)

Ex.6 Translate the sentences into Russian, using words such as be likely, be unlikely, be certain, be sure.

1. The company is likely to announce its new product next week.
2. He is unlikely to apologize; he never admits his mistakes.
3. As he has broken the rules, he is certain to be punished.
4. This new social network is sure to become very popular.
5. Don't worry, your keys are certain to be in your bag.

Ex.7 Paraphrase the sentences using the construction be (un)likely / (un)certain / sure + to-infinitive.

Example: I'm sure that he will agree. → He is sure to agree.

1. It is probable that they will be late.
2. I doubt that we will see any change soon.
3. It is certain that the decision will cause controversy.
4. I'm sure that you will enjoy the film.
5. There is no chance that this old car will win the race.

Ex.8 Choose the appropriate adjective (likely, unlikely, certain, sure) that fits the meaning.

1. He has studied for weeks. He is **likely / unlikely** to pass the exam.
2. She hasn't practiced at all. She is **unlikely / certain** to win the competition.
3. The sky is full of dark clouds. It is **unlikely / likely** to rain.
4. The package was sent by express mail. It is **certain / unlikely** to arrive tomorrow.
5. With his experience, he is **sure / unlikely** to get the job.

Ex.9 Open the brackets and choose the correct infinitive form (Bare Infinitive without 'to' or 'to-Infinitive').

1. I saw him (leave / to leave) the house.
2. He was seen (leave / to leave) the house.
3. The teacher made the student (rewrite / to rewrite) the essay.
4. The student was made (rewrite / to rewrite) the essay.
5. We heard her (sing / to sing) a beautiful song.
6. She was heard (sing / to sing) a beautiful song.
7. They noticed the man (enter / to enter) the bank.
8. The man was noticed (enter / to enter) the bank.

Ex.10 Paraphrase the sentences from the active voice into the passive voice, using the Complex Subject construction.

Example: Someone saw him take the money. → He was seen to take the money.

1. People heard the explosion two miles away.
2. The boss made the staff work overtime.

3. Somebody noticed her crying.
4. They watched the sun set behind the mountains.
5. Our parents made us clean our rooms.

Ex.11 Correct the mistakes where it is necessary.

1. She was seen leave in a hurry.
2. I heard him to play the piano yesterday.
3. The children were made clean the classroom.
4. Did anyone notice the postman to come?
5. He was watched to cross the street carefully.

Ex.12 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct infinitive form from the list:

to write / to have written / to be writing / to have been written / to have been writing

1. He is a famous novelist. He is said _____ several bestsellers by now.
2. As a professional, he is expected _____ at least one chapter per week.
3. Don't disturb him now. He is known _____ a new book at the moment.
4. Look at his focused expression. He appears _____ deeply for the last two hours.
5. The manuscript is considered _____ by a true master many centuries ago.

Ex.13 Open the brackets choosing the correct infinitive form.

I. to do (Simple Infinitive Active), to be doing (Continuous Infinitive Active), to be done (Simple Infinitive Passive).

1. He seems _____ (arrive) at any moment.
2. The problem is considered _____ (solve) by the team of experts.
3. She is said _____ (work) on a very important project right now.
4. The children were heard _____ (play) in the yard at the moment.
5. The new law is likely _____ (introduce) next month.
6. He was seen _____ (leave) the party alone.
7. The president is reported _____ (fly) to London for the summit.

II. to have done (Perfect Infinitive Active), to have been doing (Perfect Continuous Infinitive Active), to have been done (Perfect Infinitive Passive)

1. He is known _____ (live) in this house for more than twenty years.
2. The manuscript is believed _____ (write) in the 15th century.
3. She was reported _____ (wait) for the bus for an hour before it finally came.
4. The money is thought _____ (steal) during the night.
5. They are said _____ (travel) around Africa all last summer.
6. The athlete is considered _____ (break) the world record.
7. He is believed _____ (work) on his novel for five years before it was published.

Ex.14 Open the brackets and put the verb into the correct infinitive form (Perfect & Perfect Continuous).

1. Sarah isn't at her desk. She seems (to leave) _____ earlier.
2. He looked exhausted when I saw him. He appeared (to work) _____ non-stop since morning.
3. The project is finally ready. It is reported (to finish) _____ ahead of schedule.
4. Her eyes were red. She was certain (to cry) _____.
5. The team is celebrating. They are expected (to win) _____ the championship.
6. He was covered in paint. He appeared (to paint) _____ the ceiling all day.

Ex.15 Translate the words in brackets into English using the Complex Subject construction.

1. He is considered (быть) _____ a brilliant mathematician in his youth.
2. She was heard (разговаривать) _____ on the phone when we entered the room.
3. The children seem (играть) _____ outside at the moment.
4. The criminal is believed (скрываться) _____ in this area for the past two weeks.
5. This book is known (перевести) _____ into dozens of languages.
6. The new film is expected (стать) _____ a blockbuster.
7. They were seen (уйти) _____ from the building around midnight.

Ex.16 Translate into English using the Complex Subject construction.

1. Говорят, она была очень красивой в молодости. 2. Известно, что он не владеет этим домом. 3. Кажется, он работает над чем-то важным. 4. Слышали, как они громко спорили. 5. Скорее всего, они уже знают правду. 6. Ожидается, что новый закон будет принят в следующем месяце. 7. Кажется, она не получила наше сообщение. 8. Его видели, как он выходил из банка вчера в 5 часов. 9. Маловероятно, что погода улучшится к выходным. 10. Оказалось, что они всё это время жили по соседству. 11. Несомненно, его открытие изменит мир. 12. Сообщают, что самолет приземлился благополучно. 13. Видели, как он входил в здание около полуночи. 14. Её заставили переписать отчет полностью. 15. Детей заставили убрать всю комнату, прежде чем они могли пойти гулять. 16. Похоже, он не понял инструкций.

REVISION
(Infinitive)

Ex.1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the infinitive (active or passive).

1. I'm happy ___ (see) you again today.
2. She pretended ___ (read) when her mother entered the room.
3. The children seem ___ (play) outside right now — I can hear them laughing.
4. He seems ___ (work) hard these days — he's always at the office.
5. The manager appears ___ (explain) the new rules at the moment.
6. I'm sorry ___ (disturb) you now.
7. She was sorry ___ (miss) the meeting yesterday.
8. He seems ___ (finish) the report already — he's just printed it out.
9. The students are glad ___ (choose) for the exchange program.
10. She claims ___ (meet) him before, at a conference in Paris.
11. They are lucky ___ (offer) such a great opportunity. They are planning how to realize it.
12. He pretended ___ (sleep) when I came in, but I knew he wasn't.
13. The project seems ___ (complete) by the end of next week.
14. She appears ___ (work) on that book for several years before it was published.

15. He seems ___ (work) on the presentation all morning — just look at his desk!
16. The documents seem ___ (lose); we can't find them anywhere now.
17. She was delighted ___ (invite) to such an important event last night.
18. The witness is believed ___ (tell) the truth in court today.
19. The witness is believed ___ (tell) the truth during the investigation last week.
20. The children seemed ___ (play) in the garden for hours before it started to rain.
21. He's known ___ (help) many people throughout his career.
22. The results are expected ___ (announce) tomorrow.

Ex.2 Complete the sentences using the correct infinitive form.

PART I.

1. We expected the new policy ___ (implement) before the end of the year, but it hasn't been approved yet.
2. The man was seen ___ (wait) outside the embassy for nearly two hours.
3. I believe him ___ (work) on this project since January — he seems to know every detail.
4. The results are reported ___ (analyze) by a team of independent experts.
5. The professor found the students ___ (lack) background knowledge in linguistics.
6. She is known ___ (contribute) a lot to the development of this theory.
7. They made the intern ___ (redo) the report three times until it was perfect.
8. The intern was made ___ (redo) the report after a serious mistake had been found.
9. Everyone expected the conference ___ (begin) at 9, but it was delayed.
10. We saw the workers ___ (install) new equipment when we arrived.
11. The workers were seen ___ (install) new equipment in the lab.
12. I thought her ___ (have) left long before I came, but she was still there.
13. The company is said ___ (negotiate) with several foreign partners at the moment.
14. I would like you ___ (be) more careful when sending official emails.
15. The car was heard ___ (start) suddenly and drive away.
16. He's believed ___ (to work) on a classified project for the past five years.
17. I noticed him ___ (look) through the papers nervously as if he were hiding something.
18. The papers were found ___ (be) out of order after the meeting.

19. We suppose the letter ___ (be sent) tomorrow.
20. The letter is supposed ___ (be sent) yesterday.

PART II. Transform the sentences using Complex object or Complex subject.

Example: People believe that she was offered a promotion.

→ *She is **believed to have been offered** a promotion.*

1. They expect the scientists to announce the discovery soon.
→ ___ The scientists
2. We saw that the teacher left the school very late.
→ ___ The teacher.....
3. The manager made the team rewrite the report twice.
→ ___ The team
4. It is reported that the new airport will open next spring.
→ ___ The new airport
5. Everyone knows that he has solved the problem already.
→ ___ He
6. We suppose the documents to have been signed yesterday.
→ ___ The documents
7. The teacher made the students rewrite their essays.
→ ___ The students
8. It is said that the delegation arrived last night.
→ ___ The delegation

Ex.3 Choose the right variant.

1. He seems ___ very tired lately.
A) to be B) be C) to have been D) having been
2. I heard the phone ___ while I was taking a shower.
A) to ring B) ring C) ringing D) to have rung
3. The witness is believed ___ the truth during the trial yesterday.
A) to tell B) tell C) to have told D) to be telling
4. We expected the project ___ by September, but the deadline was extended.
A) to complete B) complete C) to have been completed D) to be completing

5. She was seen ___ the park with a large black dog.
A) cross B) crossing C) to cross D) to have crossed
6. They made the children ___ their rooms before watching TV.
A) clean B) to clean C) cleaning D) have cleaned
7. The children were made ___ their rooms before they could watch TV.
A) clean B) to clean C) to have cleaned D) cleaning
8. He seems ___ on this problem for hours — just look at his desk!
A) to work B) to be working C) to have worked D) to have been working
9. I would rather ___ at home tonight — I'm too tired to go out.
A) stay B) to stay C) staying D) have stayed
10. She is known ___ fluent in three languages.
A) being B) to be C) be D) to have been
11. We saw the car ___ at the traffic lights.
A) stop B) to stop C) stopping D) to have stopped
12. The manager expects all employees ___ the meeting on time tomorrow.
A) to attend B) attend C) to have attended D) attending
13. It's unusual for him ___ so careless — he's normally very precise.
A) to be B) be C) being D) to have been
14. The new product is reported ___ successfully tested before launch.
A) to have been B) have been C) to be D) being
15. I'd better ___ my work now if I don't want to miss the deadline.
A) to finish B) finish C) finishing D) have finished

Unit 18. The Participle

Причастие

Причастие (Participle) — это неличная форма глагола, которая сочетает в себе признаки глагола, прилагательного или наречия и соответствует в русском языке причастию и деепричастию. Используется для образования временных форм глагола (Continuous /Perfect) в активном и пассивном залоге и как средство сжатия предложений путем замены придаточных конструкций. Причастие, как и все неличные формы глагола, не выражает лицо и число, но имеет форму времени и залога. Время, выраженное причастием, имеет относительное значение, т.е. формы времени причастия обычно выражают действие как одновременное или предшествующее по отношению к действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме.

В английском языке существуют два основных типа причастия: причастие настоящего времени **Participle I (Present /Indefinite Participle)** и причастие прошедшего времени **Participle II (Past Participle)**.

Причастие настоящего времени в активном залоге **Participle I (Present Participle Active)** образуется от основной формы глагола при помощи суффикса **-ing (V+ing)**: *go* → *going*, *eat* → *eating*, *write* → *writing*.

Причастие прошедшего времени **Participle II (Past Participle)** образуется от основной формы правильного глагола с помощью окончания **-ed**: *walk* → *walked*, *play* → *played* или **-d**, если глагол оканчивается на немую **-e**: *open* — *opened*, *live* — *lived*. Неправильные глаголы имеют уникальные формы **Past Participle (V3)**, которые нужно запоминать (See the Appendix, p. 318).

Отрицательная частица **not** ставится перед причастием: *not asking* (*не спрашивая*), *not having asked* (*не спросив*) и т.д.

Типы и формы причастия (Participle types and forms)

<i>Voice</i>	<i>Present Participle (Participle I)</i>	<i>Past Participle (Participle II)</i>	<i>Participle I Perfect</i>
Active	asking	asked	having asked
Passive	being asked		having been asked
	выражает действие, одновременное с действием глагола сказуемого	выражает действие, одновременное или предшествующее действию глагола-сказуемого	выражает действие, предшествующее глаголу-сказуемому

Причастие выполняет в предложении следующие функции:

- функцию определения к существительному:

*A **barking** dog kept us awake all night.* = *Лающая собака не давала нам спать всю ночь.*

*The road **damaged** by the storm is closed for repairs.* = *Дорога, поврежденная бурей, закрыта на ремонт.*

- функцию обстоятельства, определяющего действие, выраженное сказуемым:

*Anna sat in the armchair **thinking hard**.* = *Анна сидела в кресле, напряженно думая.*

*He walked down the street, **whistling** a tune.* = *Он шёл по улице, насвистывая мелодию.*

Глагольные свойства причастия выражаются в следующем:

- причастие может иметь прямое дополнение: ***Opening the letter**, she began to read it.* = *Открыв письмо, она начала его читать.*
- причастие может определяться наречием: ***Carefully placing** the vase on the shelf, he stepped back.* = *Осторожно поставив вазу на полку, он отступил назад.*

Participle I (Present Participle Active) соответствует русскому действительному причастию настоящего и прошедшего времени и выражает действие, одновременное с действием, выраженным глаголом в личной форме:

<i>Время глагола-сказуемого</i>	<i>Present Participle Active</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
Present Simple	<i>The young woman speaking at the conference right now is a famous scientist.</i>	<i>Молодая женщина, выступающая на конференции прямо сейчас, известный учёный.</i>
Past Simple	<i>The young woman speaking at the conference yesterday was a famous scientist.</i>	<i>Молодая женщина, выступавшая на конференции вчера, известный учёный.</i>
Future Simple	<i>All participants speaking at the conference tomorrow will receive a certificate.</i>	<i>Все участники, которые будут выступать на конференции завтра, получат сертификат.</i>

Функции причастия настоящего времени
(Participle I / Present Participle Active)
(The Functions of the Present Participle Active)

Функция	Present Participle Active	Перевод
<p>Определение</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - перед существительным (как отглагольное прилагательное) - после существительного в причастных оборотах, соответствующих определительным придаточным предложениям (имеют ярко выраженное глагольное значение) 	<p><i>The rising moon wasn't seen behind the high building.</i></p> <p><i>They looked at the flying plane.</i></p> <p><i>The man talking to Mary (= who is talking to Mary) is my brother.</i></p> <p>Look at the picture hanging (= which is hanging) on the wall.</p>	<p>Восходящую луну не было видно за высоким зданием.</p> <p>Они смотрели на летающий самолёт.</p> <p>Мужчина, разговаривающий с Мэри (= Мужчина, который разговаривает с Мэри), мой брат.</p> <p>Посмотрите на картину, висящую на стене (= которая висит на стене).</p>
<p>Обстоятельство</p> <p>— времени*, **</p> <p><i>*Present Participle от глагола to be — being не употребляется в оборотах, выражающих обстоятельство времени, но только причины.</i></p> <p><i>** Present Participle Active может выражать предшествующее действие, но только в том случае, если эти действия следуют одно за другим (обычно с глаголами восприятия и движения to see, to hear, to come, to arrive, to seize [si:z]-хватать, to look, to turn, to run, to enter)</i></p> <p>— причины</p> <p>— образа действия</p>	<p><i>While listening to music, I fell asleep.</i></p> <p>When going home, I met my friend.</p> <p><i>While in Moscow (или: While I was in Moscow) I visited The State Tretyakov Gallery (While-being-in-Moscow).</i></p> <p><i>Hearing footsteps (= When he heard footsteps), he rose and went to open the door.</i></p> <p><i>Arriving at the station (= When he arrived at the station), he called a porter.</i></p> <p><i>Being tired (= As he was tired) he fell asleep early.</i></p> <p>They walked along the beach holding hands.</p>	<p>Слушая музыку, я уснула.</p> <p>Идя домой, я встретил друга.</p> <p>Когда я была в Москве, я посетила Третьяковскую галерею.</p> <p>Услышав шаги (= Когда он услышал шаги), он встал и пошёл открывать дверь.</p> <p>Приехав на станцию (= Когда он приехал на станцию), он позвонил носильщика.</p> <p>Будучи усталым (= Так как он устал), он уснул рано.</p> <p>Они шли по пляжу, держась за руки.</p>

Present Participle Passive соответствует русскому страдательному причастию (*being discussed* — *обсуждаемый, будучи обсужденным (обсуждаемым)*), и действительному причастию (*being built* — *строящийся, будучи построен*), а также русскому страдательному деепричастию.

В этой функции Present Participle Passive употребляется для выражения длительного действия, совершающегося в настоящий момент (момент речи) или в настоящий период времени в причастных оборотах:

*The book now **being discussed** at the seminar (= **which is being discussed** at the seminar = *которая обсуждается на семинаре*) is very important for us.* = Книга, обсуждаемая сейчас на семинаре (*которая обсуждается сейчас на семинаре*), очень важна для нас.

*The large house **being built** in our street (= **which is being built** in our street) is a new school.* = Большой дом, *строящийся* на нашей улице (= *который строится* на нашей улице), новая школа.

Функции причастия настоящего времени в пассивном залоге (*The Functions of the Present Participle Passive*)

Функция	Present Participle Passive	Перевод
Определение - для выражения длительного действия, совершающегося в настоящий момент (момент речи) или в настоящий период времени	<i>The project being developed by our team will be launched next month.</i> <i>The patient being treated in the emergency room needs surgery.</i>	Проект, <i>разрабатываемый</i> нашей командой, будет запущен в следующем месяце. Пациент, <i>лечащийся (которого сейчас лечат)</i> в отделении неотложной помощи, нуждается в операции.
Обстоятельство — времени — причины	<i>Being treated in the hospital, he missed several classes.</i> <i>Being interviewed by the journalist, she tried to stay calm.</i>	Пока его <i>лечили</i> в больнице (<i>Когда он лечился в больнице</i>), он пропустил несколько занятий. Будучи <i>интервьюируемой</i> журналистом (<i>Когда у нее брали интервью</i>), она старалась сохранять спокойствие.

	<i>Being criticized by his colleagues, he decided to change his approach.</i>	<i>Так как его критиковали коллеги, он решил изменить свой подход.</i>
	<i>Being offered a good job, he moved to another city.</i>	<i>Поскольку ему предложили хорошую работу, он переехал в другой город.</i>

Participle II (Past Participle) — причастие прошедшего времени, в отличие от причастия настоящего времени Participle I, имеет лишь одну неизменяемую форму и может выражать как одновременное, так и предшествующее действие относительно глагола-сказуемого. Причастие прошедшего времени в английском языке соответствует русскому страдательному причастию настоящего времени (*bought* — *покупаемый*), прошедшего времени (*bought* — *купленный*, *reached* — *достигнутый*).

Функции причастия прошедшего времени (The Functions of the Participle II / Past Participle)

Функция	Participle II / Past Participle	Перевод
Определение - перед существительным (как отглагольное прилагательное) - после существительного (имеют ярко выраженное глагольное значение)	<i>There are many illustrated books for children in our library.</i> <i>A broken cup lay on the table.</i> <i>The book written by a famous author is a bestseller.</i> <i>The documents signed by the director are on the table.</i>	<i>В нашей библиотеке много иллюстрированных книг для детей.</i> <i>Разбитая чашка лежала на столе.</i> <i>Книга, написанная знаменитым писателем, — бестселлер.</i> <i>Документы, подписанные директором, лежат на столе.</i>
Обстоятельство — времени	<i>Translated into several languages (When translated into several languages), the book became popular worldwide.</i> <i>Asked about the incident (When asked about the incident), the witness refused to comment.</i>	<i>Переведённая на несколько языков, книга стала популярной во всём мире. (Когда книгу перевели на несколько языков, она стала популярной во всём мире).</i> <i>Спрошенный об инциденте, свидетель отказался комментировать. (Когда свидетеля спросили об инциденте, он отказался комментировать).</i>

— причины	<i>Shocked by the news, she could hardly speak.</i>	<i>Потрясённая новостями, она едва могла говорить.</i>
	<i>Encouraged by his teacher, he decided to enter the competition.</i>	<i>Воодушевлённый своим учителем, он решил принять участие в соревновании.</i>
— в функции именной части сказуемого (соответствует в русском языке краткому страдательному причастию)	<i>The letters were written.</i> <i>The instrument is broken.</i>	<i>Письма были написаны.</i> <i>Инструмент сломан.</i>
Конструкция <i>have + object + past participle (V3)</i>	<i>I had my hair cut yesterday.</i>	<i>Меня постригли вчера.</i>

Перфектное причастие в активном залоге **Perfect Participle Active** соответствует в русском языке деепричастию совершенного вида: *having received* — *получив*, *having done* — *сделав*, *having come* — *придя*. Participle I Perfect Active, как и соответствующее ему деепричастие в русском языке, выражает действие, предшествующее действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме.

Функции Participle I Perfect в активном залоге **(The Functions of the Perfect Participle Active)**

Функция	Perfect Participle Active	Перевод
Обстоятельство — времени (когда хотят подчеркнуть, что действие, выраженное причастием, предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме, или, когда между этими действиями имеется разрыв во времени)*	<i>Having travelled about the USA for nearly two years, he returned to Europe.</i> <i>Having collected all the data, he was able to launch the new project.</i>	<i>Пропутешествовав по США в течение примерно двух лет, он вернулся в Европу.</i> <i>Собрав всю информацию, он смог запустить новый проект.</i>
— причины	<i>Having practiced for weeks, she performed brilliantly at the concert.</i>	<i>Попрактиковавшись несколько недель, она блестяще выступила на концерте. (Так как она практиковалась несколько недель, она блестяще выступила на концерте).</i>

	<i>Having completed the project ahead of schedule, she took a short vacation.</i>	<i>Завершив проект раньше срока, она взяла короткий отпуск. (Так как проект был завершён, она могла отдохнуть.)</i>
--	---	---

Примечания:

* Когда речь идет о двух действиях, непосредственно следующих одно за другим, и нет необходимости подчеркнуть, что действие, выраженное причастием, предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме, употребляется не Perfect Participle, а Present Participle:

Opening the window, she looked out into the garden. = **Открыв** окно, она выглянула в сад.

Turning the corner, they saw the bus stop. = **Повернув** за угол, они увидели автобусную остановку.

Putting on his coat, he left the house. = **Надев** пальто, он вышел из дома.

Перфектное причастие в пассивном залоге **Perfect Participle Passive** употребляется в функции обстоятельства в причастных оборотах для выражения причины и времени, и выражает действие, предшествующее действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме.

Функции Perfect Participle Passive
(The Functions of the Perfect Participle Passive)

Функция	Perfect Participle Passive	Перевод
Обстоятельство — времени (когда хотят подчеркнуть, что действие, выраженное причастием, предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме, или, когда между этими действиями имеется разрыв во времени)	<i>Having been cleaned, the rooms were ready for the guests.</i> <i>Having been repaired, the car was returned to the owner.</i>	<i>После уборки комнаты были готовы для гостей.</i> <i>После ремонта машина была возвращена владельцу.</i>
— причины	<i>Having been informed of the change, he cancelled his trip.</i> <i>Having been warned about the storm, they decided to stay home.</i>	<i>Будучи уведомлённым о перемене, он отменил поездку.</i> = <i>(Поскольку его уведомили об изменениях, он отменил поездку.)</i> <i>Получив предупреждение о шторме, они решили остаться дома.</i>

Особенности перевода русских причастий на английский язык

Английские причастия соответствуют как русским причастиям, так и деепричастиям. Так как специальных форм, соответствующих русским деепричастиям, в английском языке нет, причастия в английском языке употребляются в основном в тех же случаях, в каких причастия и деепричастия употребляются в русском языке.

Способы перевода русских причастий и деепричастий на английский язык на примере причастий от глаголов «покупать» (несовершенный вид) и «купив» (совершенный вид), соответствующие английскому глаголу *to buy*

	Залог	Вид	Русский вариант причастия/ деепричастия	Английский вариант причастия	Примеры
Причастие	действительный залог	несовершенный вид	покупающий, покупавший	buying не используется*	The man <i>buying</i> a car is my neighbor. = Мужчина, покупающий машину, мой сосед. The man <i>who bought the car</i> yesterday is my brother. = Мужчина, покупавший машину вчера, мой брат.
		совершенный вид	купивший	не используется*	The man <i>who bought the car</i> yesterday is my brother. = Мужчина, купивший машину вчера, мой брат.
	страдательный залог	несовершенный вид	покупаемый	being bought	The car <i>being bought</i> by my neighbor is very expensive. = Машина, покупаемая сейчас моим соседом, очень дорогая.
		совершенный вид	купленный	bought	The car <i>bought</i> last year has already been sold. = Машина, купленная в прошлом году, уже продана.

Деепричастие	действительный залог	несовершенный вид	покупая	buying	Buying the car, my neighbor examined and tested it. = Покупая машину, мой сосед осмотрел и проверил её.
		совершенный вид	купив	having bought	Having bought the car, my neighbor went on a trip. = Купив машину, мой сосед отправился в путешествие.
	страдательный залог	несовершенный вид	будучи покупаемым	being bought	Being bought from a reliable dealer, the car does not require any additional investments. = Будучи покупаемой у надежного продавца (Так как покупается у надежного продавца), машина не требует дополнительных вложений.
		совершенный вид	будучи купленным	having been bought	Having been bought at a great price, the car quickly became a favorite for weekend road trips. = Будучи куплена по отличной цене (Купленная по отличной цене), машина быстро стала любимицей для поездок на выходных.

Примечания:

* Действительное причастие совершенного вида (а также несовершенного вида прошедшего времени), оканчивающееся на **-вший** (*купивший, покупавший*) обычно выражает действие, предшествующее действию, выраженному глаголом-сказуемым, и в этом случае переводится на английский язык определительным придаточным предложением (*who bought, who has bought, who had bought, who was buying, who has (had) been buying*).

Однако, существуют примеры, в которых причастие несовершенного вида выражает действие, одновременное с действием глагола-сказуемого. В этом случае используется Participle I:

*I saw the man **buying** a car. He looked very stressed.* = Я видел мужчину, **покупавшего** машину. Он выглядел очень напряженным.

**Примеры типов и форм причастий
в активном и пассивном залоге с переводом**

<i>Тип причастия</i>	<i>Форма</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>	<i>Отношение действия к сказуемому</i>
Participle I Indefinite Active	selling	<i>The woman selling fruits is my neighbor.</i>	<i>Женщина, продающая фрукты, моя соседка.</i>	Одновременное действие в настоящем
Participle I Indefinite Passive	being sold	<i>The items being sold here are handmade.</i>	<i>Товары, продаваемые здесь, сделаны вручную.</i>	Одновременное действие в настоящем
Participle I Perfect Active	having sold	<i>Having sold his car, he bought a new one.</i>	<i>Продав свою машину, он купил новую.</i>	Предшествующее действие в прошлом
Participle I Perfect Passive	having been sold	<i>Having been sold at a high price, the painting attracted media attention.</i>	<i>Будучи проданной за высокую цену, картина привлекла внимание СМИ.</i>	Предшествующее действие в прошлом
Participle II	sold	<i>The books sold last week brought a good profit.</i>	<i>Книги, проданные на прошлой неделе, принесли хорошую прибыль.</i>	Предшествующее действие в прошлом
Participle II	sold	<i>The most widely sold products in this store are electronics.</i>	<i>Наиболее широко продаваемыми товарами в этом магазине является электроника.</i>	Одновременное действие в настоящем

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Translate the sentences from English into Russian identifying the function of the Participle in the sentence.

Part I. Participle I (Active / Passive)

Attribute (определение)	Adverbial modifier (обстоятельство времени)	Adverbial modifier (обстоятельство причины)

1.

1. The man *speaking* at the conference is a famous scientist.
2. *Not knowing* the answer, he kept silent.
3. *Having finished* the meal, they left the restaurant.
4. *Walking* along the river, she suddenly met her old friend.
5. *Having been warned* about the danger, they stayed cautious.
6. The film *being shown* now is based on a true story.
7. *Being asked* unexpected questions, the student got confused.
8. *Having seen* the film before, I didn't want to watch it again.
9. He stood at the corner *smoking* a cigarette.
10. *Having packed* her things, she called a taxi.

Part II. Participle II

Attribute (определение)	Adverbial modifier (обстоятельство времени)	Adverbial modifier (обстоятельство причины)	Predicative (именная часть сказуемого)

1. The book *written* by Dickens is still popular.
2. The problem seems *solved*.
3. *Surprised* by the news, he couldn't say a word.
4. When *found*, the lost wallet was returned to its owner.
5. *Tired* from the long journey, the traveler quickly fell asleep.
6. The *broken* window needs to be replaced.
7. *Given* more time, he has done the project better.
8. The door is *locked*.
9. When *asked* about the incident, the witness refused to comment.
10. *Frightened* by the loud noise, the child started to cry.

Ex.2 Translate the following participles.

Part I.

Говорящий, бегущий, пьющий, смотрящий, играющий, работающий, плачущий, смеющийся, гуляющий, изучающий, поющий, спящий.

Part II.

Напуганный, интересующий, заинтересованный, закрытый, закрывающийся, улыбающийся, сломанный, ломающий, горящий, потерянный,

развивающий, развитый, уставший, приходящий, идущий, купленный, покупающий.

Part III.

Сделав, закончив, услышав, прочитав, увидев, приняв решение, потратив, получив, написав, приготовив, выпив, закрыв, купив, проснувшись, прожив, открыв.

Part IV.

1. Пишущий (человек) — написав (письмо) — написанный (роман); читающий (студент) — прочитав (книгу) — прочитанный (отчёт); строящий (архитектор) — построив (дом) — построенный (мост); готовящий (повар) — приготовив (ужин) — приготовленный (завтрак); рисующий (художник) — нарисовав (портрет) — нарисованная (картина); открывающий (дверь) — открыв (окно) — открытый (музей).

Ex.3 Translate the following phrases into Russian.

- developing emotion / developed emotion;
- changing behavior / changed behavior;
- controlling mechanism / controlled mechanism;
- increasing attention / increased attention;
- transmitting signal / transmitted signal;
- reducing anxiety / reduced anxiety;
- moving stimulus / moved stimulus;
- calming techniques / calmed child

Ex.4 Form Participle I (Indefinite, Active) from the following verbs and translate them into Russian:

to observe, to learn, to feel, to remember, to focus, to react, to develop, to understand, to perceive, to process, to store, to use, to include, to express, to experience, to get, to happen, to test, to teach, to tell, to make, to begin, to keep, to study, to return, to form, to save.

Ex.5 Form Participle II from the following verbs and translate them into Russian:

to find, to learn, to test, to add, to change, to keep, to take, to save, to maintain, to observe, to consider, to feel, to achieve, to show, to develop, to decide, to

receive, to leave, to equip, to study, to return, to write, to read, to make, to do, to give, to see, to say, to speak

Ex.6 Open the brackets using the present participle (Participle I) in the active and passive forms.

1. (To impress) by the lecture, they kept silent.
2. (To lose) his notes, the student couldn't prepare for the seminar on feelings.
3. He spent the whole day (to read) about theories of emotion.
4. (To travel) to different conferences for a year, she returned to her university.
5. He watched the child (to go) out of the room and (to cross) the corridor.
6. The concept (to discuss) now is very important for understanding memory.
7. (To pack) in a simple box, the psychological test looked ordinary.
8. (To descent) the stairs, they heard a patient calling for help.
9. (To reject) by his peers, he felt lonely.
10. (To show) the wrong data, the researchers got confused.

Ex.7 Change the sentences using the Present Participle Passive as an attribute.

Example: *The lecture which is being delivered now is very interesting.* → ***The lecture being delivered now is very interesting.***

1. The patient who is being examined now by the doctor is Mrs. Smith.
2. The theory which is being developed now is groundbreaking.
3. The emotion which is being analyzed now is fear.
4. We didn't like the method that was being used in the experiment.
5. The data that was being processed by the computer was complex.

Ex.8 Open the brackets using the Participle II. Translate the sentences.

1. The article (to write) by him was very interesting.
2. We are interested in the methods (to produce) by this psychological school.
3. She didn't understand the term (to say) by the professor.
4. He didn't see the emotions (to keep) inside.
5. I don't like the method (to use) in that old study.
6. This is the theory (to develop) many years ago.
7. The question (to put) to the scientist was about emotions.
8. When (to offer) a new therapy, he agreed to try.

9. The article on memory (to publish) in this journal was written by a Nobel laureate.
10. You can get the book (to recommend) by our teacher in the library.
11. When (to use) for therapy, this technique is very effective.
12. When (to complete) the new research will help many people.

Ex.9. Change the sentences using the Past Participle as an attribute.

Example: *I noticed the book which was left on the table. → I noticed the book left on the table.*

1. He described the dream which was seen by the child.
2. We studied the results which were obtained in the study.
3. The feeling which was experienced by everyone was relief.
4. He couldn't explain the image which was formed in his dream.
5. The therapist who was invited for a consultation was an expert.

Ex.10 Open the brackets using the correct form of the participle (Participle I / II).

1. The (burn) candle filled the room with a pleasant smell. 2. The (burn) paper lay in the fireplace. 3. The (break) window was fixed yesterday. 4. We saw the waves (break) against the rocks. 5. The (excite) child couldn't wait for the trip to start. 6. Everyone was disappointed with the (excite) news. 7. We admired the (paint) girl standing by the easel. 8. The (paint) wall looked fresh and bright. 9. The (move) car stopped suddenly at the red light. 10. The (move) boxes were stacked neatly in the corner.

Ex.11 Choose the correct form of the participle (Participle I / II).

1. The (frighten / frightening) boy ran out of the dark room. 2. The (frighten / frightening) sound came from the basement. 3. He made an (insulting / insulted) comment about her work. 4. A (falling / fallen) tree blocked the road after the storm. 5. The (confused / confusing) student asked the teacher for help. 6. The (confusing / confused) instructions made everyone make mistakes. 7. We watched an (exciting / excited) football match. 8. I find these constant delays very (frustrating / frustrated). 9. He told us an (amusing / amused) story about his dog. 10. It was a long and (tired / tiring) journey.

Ex.12 Paraphrase the sentences using participles instead of clauses.

1. *When she entered the room*, she noticed that everyone was staring at her.
2. The people *who live next door* are very friendly.

3. The documents *that were signed yesterday* are on the director's desk.
4. *Because he didn't know what to say*, he remained silent.
5. The students *who were invited to the conference* will receive certificates.
6. The man *who was driving the car* didn't notice the red light.
7. The report *that was written by our team* impressed the manager.
8. *When I was walking home*, I was caught in heavy rain.

Ex.13 Translate the participles in brackets into English.

1. There are many books (иллюстрированных) by the artist on the shelf.
2. (Зная) him for a long time, I had no illusions about his plans.
3. (Будучи) in St. Petersburg we visited Hermitage.
4. They were listening the birds (поющих) in the garden.
5. The report (разрабатываемый) by our team will be presented tomorrow.
6. (Услышав) footsteps, he stood up and went to the door.
7. While (слушая) music, I fell asleep.
8. (Будучи ответственным) student, he always completes his assignments on time.
9. (Восходящее) sun wasn't seen behind the high wall.
10. (Придя) at the office, he immediately started reading documents.
11. The students (приглашённые) to the conference will receive certificates.
12. The letter (написанное) yesterday is still on the table.
13. (Видя) his old friend, he smiled happily.
14. (Опаздывая) for the meeting, she decided to take a taxi.
15. (Когда его лечили) in the hospital, he missed his home terribly.

Ex.14 Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

<i>Beginnings</i>	<i>Endings</i>
a) Having lost his passport,	1) he was finally ready for a break.
b) Built in the 18th century,	2) the castle attracts thousands of tourists.
c) When asked such a question,	3) the suit-case was taken to the left-luggage office.
d) Having worked all night,	4) he had to stay at the embassy.
e) Being left on the station,	5) Maria blushed with confusion.

Ex.15 Choose the appropriate forms of Participle.

A

1. The psychologists (**discussing / discussed**) this behavior will publish their findings.
2. The theories (**discussing / discussed**) at the conference are crucial for child development.
3. The subjects (**studying / studied**) in the first year of psychology are: perception, emotions, and cognition.
4. Students (**studying / studied**) child psychology should observe children's behavior.
5. The professor (**delivering / delivered**) lectures on emotional development is a renowned expert.
6. The lecture (**delivering / delivered**) by professor N. was about visual perception in infants.
7. Specialists (**training / trained**) at our institute work with children with special needs.
8. The therapist (**training / trained**) our team uses modern methods.

B

1. (**Having written / writing**) the report on the child's behavior, she noticed many patterns.
2. (**Having written / writing**) the observation notes, she submitted them to the department.
3. (**Building / having built**) a new theory, researchers used recent data on child development.
4. (**Building / having built**) the new therapy model, they presented it at the international congress.
5. (**While living / having lived**) in the kindergarten for her research, she observed children's interactions daily.
6. (**While living / having lived**) in Moscow for her research, she moved to St. Petersburg to continue.
7. (**When solving / having solved**) a complex case, psychologists consult with colleagues.

Ex.16 Open the brackets using Present Participle or Perfect Participle.

1. (to talk) to her therapist, she did not notice the time.
2. (to read) the chapter on perception, she closed the book and started to meditate.

3. (to buy) some books on psychology, we went home.
4. (to sit) in a comfortable chair, he felt very relaxed.
5. (to do) a complex cognitive task, he was thinking hard.
6. (to do) his meditation, he went for a walk.
7. (to eat) his lunch, he thought about the morning lecture on emotions.
8. (to look) through psychological studies, I came across an interesting fact about memory.
9. (To write) down all the terms, I started to learn them.
10. (To buy) a new book on psychology, they left the store.
11. She entered the therapy room (to smile).
12. (To drink) tea, she was talking to her psychologist.
13. (To find) the correct research papers, we were able to write the report.
14. (To make) a note, the psychologist continued the session.
15. (To see) his friend, he waved his hand.
16. My report (to finish), I felt relaxed.
17. While (to learn) about perception, we learned about optical illusions.

Ex.17 Join the sentences using a participle (Participle I / Participle II / Perfect Participle) making any necessary changes in the word order.

*Example: She finished her homework. She went to bed. → **Having finished her homework, she went to bed.***

1. The window was broken. It let the cold air in.
2. He saved enough money. He bought a new car.
3. He saw a policeman. He asked for directions.
4. The car was repaired. It ran perfectly again.
5. They packed their bags. They left for the airport.
6. She didn't know the answer. She stayed silent.
7. The documents were signed. They were sent to the office.
8. He heard the news. He rushed to the hospital.
9. She realized she was late. She started to run.

Ex.18 Paraphrase the sentences using participles instead of subordinate clauses.

*Example: **Because she was interested in psychology, Anna decided to major in it.** → **Being interested in psychology, Anna decided to major in it.***

1. When Sarah cooked the dinner, she went out to the local bakery.
2. Because Sarah was tired, she turned off the light and left the office.

3. As Sonya didn't know where to go next, she asked a passerby for directions.
4. After the letter had been written, Tom took it to the post office.
5. Since David had lost his keys, he couldn't open the door.
6. Because the bridge was damaged by the storm, it was dangerous to go on it.
7. After Lisa had finished her meal, she paid the bill and left.
8. When she entered the hall, she noticed that everyone was staring at her.
9. Because he felt tired, he decided to go to have a rest.
10. After I had read the book twice, I understood its deep meaning.
11. The woman who is standing near the window is our new director.
12. Since he didn't recognize her, he walked past.
13. While I was walking in the park, I met an old friend.
14. The car which was repaired yesterday has broken down again.

Ex.19 Complete the sentences with the correct participial form.

Part I.

doing — done — being done — having done;

repaired — being repaired;

found — having found;

invited

1. _____ all his work, Tom decided to watch a film.
2. The mechanic checked the car _____ in the garage.
3. _____ the lost key under the sofa, she finally relaxed.
4. The project, _____ last month, was a great success.
5. _____ by her friends, she felt happy and excited.
6. The road is closed because it is _____ at the moment.
7. _____ nothing wrong, he looked quite confident.
8. The artifacts _____ last year are in the museum now.
9. The report, _____ by experts, will be published soon.

Part II.

writing — written — being written — having written

painting — being painted

having heard

being told

1. _____ the final chapter, the author celebrated with a cup of coffee.
2. Don't touch the wall in the kitchen; it's still _____.

3. _____ a strange noise from the basement, we decided to call the landlord.
4. When I entered the office, I saw the contract _____ by the lawyer.
5. The child was happy about _____ a bedtime story.
6. _____ in just two hours, the essay was full of errors.
7. I remember _____ this fence blue last summer.
8. She was sitting on the bench, _____ a message.

Ex.20 Complete the sentences using the correct participial form.

1. I found her _____ quietly in the garden.
2. We noticed him _____ at the window all evening.
3. _____ the competition, the athletes received their medals.
4. He left the room _____ on the phone.
5. I heard them _____ in the hall.
6. _____ the flat, she finally relaxed.
7. We saw the letter _____ on the table.
8. I can't drive because my car _____ in the garage.
9. _____ all the necessary groceries, she went home.

Ex.21 Choose the right Russian equivalent of the following participles.

1. **Having interpreted** the dream, she felt relieved.
 - a) интерпретируя;
 - b) интерпретировав;
 - c) интерпретированный.
2. The patient **being interviewed** by the therapist is Mr. Brown.
 - a) которого интервьюируют;
 - b) опрошенный;
 - c) опрашивая.
3. **Having been influenced** by the past, he struggled to change.
 - a) испытав влияние;
 - b) повлияв
 - c) влияющий.
4. The emotion **being felt** now is joy.
 - a) чувствуя;
 - b) чувствуемая
 - c) ощущаемая.

5. **Having read** many books on dreams, he became an expert.
 - a) читая;
 - b) читающий;
 - c) прочитав.
6. The theory **being developed** now is fascinating.
 - a) развивающаяся;
 - b) развитая;
 - c) развив.
7. **Having been recorded** in a journal, the dream was not forgotten.
 - a) записавший;
 - b) записанный;
 - c) записав.
8. **Having refused** to talk about his fear, he remained silent.
 - a) отказывая;
 - b) отказав;
 - c) отказавшись.

Ex.22 Choose the right English equivalent.

1. (*Завершив*) the meditation, we felt calm. 1. *finishing*; 2. *having finished*; 3. *being finished*.
2. (*Когда ему сказали*) to leave the room, he didn't argue. 1. *telling*; 2. *having told*; 3. *being told*.
3. (*Проанализировав*) the data, we wrote a report. 1. *having analyzed*; 2. *analyzing*; 3. *being analyzed*.
4. (*Потеряв*) the memory, he couldn't recall the event. 1. *losing*; 2. *being lost*; 3. *having lost*.
5. The model (*разрабатываемая*) here will explain dream patterns. 1. *developing*; 2. *having been developed*; 3. *being developed*.
6. (*Оставшись*) alone with his thoughts, he began to reflect. 1. *leaving*; 2. *being left*; 3. *having left*.
7. (*Почувствовав*) a sudden emotion, she paused. 1. *having felt*; 2. *feeling*; 3. *being felt*; 4. *felt*.
8. The report (*отправленный*) today will be reviewed tomorrow. 1. *sending*; 2. *being sent*; 3. *having sent*; 4. *sent*.
9. (*Скрытая*) in the subconscious, the memory still had a power. 1. *hiding*; 2. *having hidden*; 3. *hidden*.
10. (*Проснувшись*) she wrote down her dream. 1. *waking up*; 2. *having woken up* 3. *woken*.

Ex.23 Translate the sentences using participial constructions.

1. Увидев автобус, пассажиры подошли к остановке. 2. Прочитав книгу, он лёг спать. 3. Письмо, написанное много лет назад, вызвало у неё воспоминания. 4. Закончив проект, студенты ушли домой. 5. Записка, оставленная Томом, была написана карандашом. 6. Будучи в Лондоне, она много гуляла в парках. 7. Мы слушали историю, рассказываемую пожилым человеком, затаив дыхание. 8. Не зная, что делать, он сел на скамейку. 9. Услышав пение, мы остановились. 10. Здание, строящееся на этой улице, наша будущая школа. 11. Уведомив всех заранее, сотрудники подготовили планы. 12. Опаздывая на работу, она попросила мужа подвезти её. 13. Красивый дом, проданный на прошлой неделе, принадлежал известному художнику. 14. Вопрос, обсуждаемый на совещании, интересовал всех сотрудников. 15. Уставшие после долгого путешествия, путники сидели у костра.

REVISION
(The Participle)

Ex.1 Fill in the gaps with a suitable participle form.

1. The project, _____ (*presenting / presented / having presented*) by the intern, was surprisingly innovative.
2. _____ (*Reading / Having read / Being read*) the manual beforehand, he assembled the furniture with ease.
3. She noticed the old man _____ (*crossing / being crossed / having crossed*) the street carefully.
4. The proposal _____ (*discussing / being discussed / having discussed*) in the committee right now is top secret.
5. _____ (*Not inviting / Not having been invited / Not being invited*) to the meeting, he felt deeply offended.

Ex.2 Use the verb in brackets in the correct participle form — active, passive, or perfect.

1. _____ (see) the smoke, the villagers ran to the hill.
2. The man _____ (injure) in the accident was taken to hospital.
3. _____ (finish) her project, Mia finally took a break.
4. The books _____ (print) last month are already sold out.
5. _____ (not eat) all day, Ben felt weak and dizzy.

6. The car _____ (repair) at the moment belongs to Mr. Jones.
7. _____ (know) the answer, she decided not to say anything.
8. The report _____ (complete) by the interns will be sent tomorrow.
9. _____ (be) warned about the storm, they stayed at home.
10. The people _____ (live) in that house are moving to Canada.

Ex.3 Turn the subordinate clauses into a participle construction and translate the sentences into Russian.

1. While we were observing the group, we saw a psychologist who was taking notes.
2. As we were focused on the task, we didn't notice the time.
3. A hypothesis, which had been proposed earlier, was finally confirmed.
4. I'll show you the questionnaire which has been developed by our team.
5. The software which is used for data analysis is very powerful.
6. As he thought that the session would be long, he prepared thoroughly.
7. Yesterday the assistant sent out all the reports which had been approved by the supervisor.
8. While I was walking to the therapy session, I met my colleague.
9. As he was distracted by noise, he couldn't concentrate on the test.
10. The application which has been submitted by the candidate was impressive.
11. When he arrived at the lab, he immediately checked the equipment.
12. When she saw the positive results, she smiled with relief.

Ex.4 Correct the mistakes.

Part I.

1. Driving all night, he found the hotel at last.
2. Mary left the room, cried bitterly.
3. The letter having been written long ago, was sent only this morning.
4. Having not known the rules, the tourists seemed confused.
5. She sat by the window, thought about her future.
6. The cake having been baked by my grandmother smells delicious.
7. The houses are being built in our town are very comfortable.
8. Here are some samples having been sent to different parts of the country.
9. After eating the lunch, she ordered a cup of tea.
10. Being in Paris Tina visited the Louvre.

Part II.

1. Feeling tired and having nothing more to do till the experiment began, she sat in the armchair having looked at the children playing in the room.
2. On the walls there were some diagrams, framing and glazed.
3. The lab was close at hand, a very modern room, painted white, with large windows.
4. It was the hour of the break, having unnoticed in the busy corridor, so quiet in the garden.
5. Finished the testing, he stayed for some minutes in the laboratory.
6. The researcher smiled looking at the children drawing pictures.
7. While reading the participant's responses, I came across several interesting comments.
8. Some questions having raised in the discussion are worth considering.
9. Leaving our belongings, we entered the observation room.
10. Hearing the signal, he pressed the button.

Ex.5 Combine the sentences using a participle construction.

*Example: The researcher had analyzed the data. The researcher drew conclusions. → **Having analyzed the data**, the researcher drew conclusions.*

1. They saw three small figures. They were climbing the mountain.
2. He repaired his car. He set off on a trip around the Europe.
3. The students were taking the exam. They were not allowed to use their phones.
4. She had never been to Paris before. She was extremely excited.
5. The bridge was damaged during the storm. It is now closed for repairs.

Ex.6 Create a story using specific participial phrases. The story scenario can be anything.

1. Having just finished his night shift, Tom went home through the old park.
2. Walking through the dark empty park, *...being watched...
He quickened his pace, glancing over his shoulder, but the narrow, dimly lit street behind him was empty.
3. **...realizing...
4. **...built in the last century...
Suddenly, a tall figure emerged from the shadows of the ancient building and called his name.

5. **...not having expected...

Tom stopped in his tracks, his heart pounding with a mix of fear and surprise.
It was ... walking through

Ex.7 Match the sentences with participle constructions to the correct descriptions.

Descriptions of meaning:

1. Simultaneous action (an action happening at the same time as the main verb)
2. Prior action (an action that happened before the main verb)
3. Completed action that refers to no particular time.

Sentences:

- a) Not having received an answer, she sent a reminder email.
- b) The house built on the hill has a beautiful view of the valley.
- c) He walked out of the room, slamming the door angrily.
- d) Feeling tired, she put aside her sewing and went to have tea.
- e) Having been warned about the danger, they avoided the area.
- f) The problem discussed yesterday is still unresolved.

Ex.8 Analyze the pairs of sentences and answer the question.

1. a) Leaving the office, Mila waved goodbye to her colleague Sarah.
b) Having left the office, Mila suddenly saw her colleague Sarah and waved her.

Question: Whom did Mila wave to from inside the office?

Answer: _____.

2. a) Opening the mysterious box, she decided to burn its contents.
b) Having opened the mysterious box, she decided to burn its contents.

Question: In which case did she make a decision after seeing what was inside?

Answer: _____.

3. a) Running for the bus, Andrew felt exhausted.
b) Having run a marathon, Tim felt exhausted.

Question: Who felt exhausted during physical activity?

Answer: _____.

4. a) Drinking his coffee, Tom left the café.
b) Having drunk his coffee, Tom left the café.
Question: In which case did Tom leave after finishing his coffee?
Answer: _____.

5. a) The car bought by my father was in the garage.
b) The car being bought by my father was in the garage.
Question: In which case was the car in my father's garage?
Answer: _____.

Ex.9 Choose the right variant.

1. _____ the difficult situation, she decided to consult her mentor.
a) Analyzing b) Having analyzed c) Being analyzed d) Analyzed
2. The problem _____ in the meeting right now is extremely urgent.
a) discussing b) being discussed c) having discussed d) discussed
3. _____ by the stunning landscape, the tourists took dozens of photos.
a) Fascinating b) Fascinated c) Having fascinated d) Being fascinated
4. She heard her name _____ by someone in the crowd.
a) calling b) call c) being called d) having called
5. _____ all his savings, he couldn't afford the new phone.
a) Spending b) Spent c) Having spent d) Being spent
6. The castle, _____ in the 15th century, is now a museum.
a) building b) built c) having built d) being built
7. _____ to the party, I decided to stay home and watch a movie.
a) Not inviting b) Not invited c) Not having invited d) Not being invited
8. He sat on the sofa, _____ a letter to his family.
a) writing b) written c) having written d) being written
9. The man _____ the car is my brother.
a) repairing b) repaired c) being repaired d) having repaired

10. _____ the test, she left the classroom early.
 a) Finishing b) Finished c) Having finished d) Being finished
11. I saw the old house _____ down to make way for a new road.
 a) tearing b) torn c) being torn d) having torn
12. _____ in Italy, she spoke fluent Italian.
 a) Born and educated b) Born and educating c) Being born and educated
 d) Having born and educated
13. _____ the answer, he decided to ask the teacher for help.
 a) Not knowing b) Not known c) Not being known d) Not having known
14. The success _____ by our team was celebrated by everyone.
 a) achieving b) achieved c) being achieved d) having achieved
15. _____ for the bus for over an hour, he was getting very angry.
 a) Waiting b) Waited c) Having waited d) Being waited

Ex.10 Translate from Russian into English.

1. Я уже проверила все тесты, написанные моими студентами. 2. Так как у нас было достаточно времени, мы решили посидеть в кафе. 3. Будучи проинформированным об изменениях в расписании, он решил выйти из дома позже. 4. Дорога, которую сейчас ремонтируют, ведет к озеру. 5. Когда его спросили об инциденте, он отказался отвечать. 6. Написанные много лет назад письма лежали в коробке. 7. Услышав странные звуки под потолком, мы поднялись на чердак. 8. Воодушевленный поддержкой, он решил участвовать в соревнованиях. 9. Переведенный на несколько языков, роман стал бестселлером. 10. Она едва могла идти, шокированная такой новостью. 11. Документы, лежащие на столе, принадлежат нашему коллеге. 12. Когда у нее брали интервью, она не ответила на несколько острых вопросов. 13. Зная дорогу, собака быстро пришла домой. 14. Опаздывая, она позвонила коллеге. 15. Законы, обсуждаемые сейчас, имеют целью решить некоторые социальные проблемы.

Ex.11 Translate into English, using different forms of the Participle.

1. Я еще не просмотрел все статьи, присланные нам для обзора. 2. Опросники, заказанные для клиники, придут через несколько дней. 3. Я уже проверил все тесты, выполненные участниками исследования. 4. Покажите мне список студентов, изучающих клиническую психологию. 5. Все сотрудники, участвующие в проекте, должны прийти на собрание сегодня в 5 часов. 6. Имея немного свободного времени, он почитал книгу по психологии. 7. Выходя из кабинета, я встретил психолога-консультанта. 8. Вы должны быть сосредоточены, выполняя это задание на внимание. 9. Будучи очень уставшим после работы, он решил отменить сеанс. 10. Тренер стоял перед группой, объясняя новое упражнение. 11. Мы долго сидели в кругу, делясь своими переживаниями. 12. Я прочел исследование, переведенное моим коллегой с английского языка. 13. Она успокоила плачущего ребенка. 14. Они спокойно беседовали, обсуждая свои эмоции. 15. Он дал мне список журналов, на которые подписана наша кафедра. 16. Я вчера прочел очень интересную работу, описывающую стадии развития личности. 17. Читая эту статью, я встретил несколько полезных терминов. 18. Будучи опытным терапевтом, он смог быстро установить контакт. 19. В его докладе есть много графиков, иллюстрирующих динамику изменения настроения. 20. Он сидел за столом, просматривая данные, полученные накануне.

TEST

Choose the right variant.

1. She smiled ... the child's joyful reaction.
 - a) remembering
 - b) to remember
 - c) remembered
2. ... so little about child emotions, I am afraid I cannot answer all your questions.
 - a) Having studied
 - b) Studying
 - c) Being studied
3. I felt very tired ... the whole day with the children.
 - a) work
 - b) having worked
 - c) being worked
4. He speaks like a man ... his knowledge of child development.
 - a) shares
 - b) sharing
 - c) having shared

5. ... how to explain the emotion to the child, she didn't know what to do.
 - a) Not having known
 - b) Didn't know
 - c) Not knowing
6. She left ... us all she had observed about the children.
 - a) telling
 - b) told
 - c) having told
7. And ... this, he showed the picture to the child.
 - a) have said
 - b) saying
 - c) said
8. By this time ... to the children's behavior, he no longer felt confused.
 - a) getting used
 - b) having got used
 - c) got used
9. I felt refreshed and rested ... for eight hours after the long observation.
 - a) having slept
 - b) sleeping
 - c) slept
10. The child came out of the playroom ... from excitement.
 - a) shaking
 - b) was shaking
 - c) having shaken
11. She turned to me for help, ... how to deal with the child's fear.
 - a) not having known
 - b) not being known
 - c) not knowing
12. I want the therapy method ... because it often causes confusion.
 - a) being changed
 - b) having changed
 - c) changed
13. I wonder what Doctor Brown thinks... of the child's perception problem now.
 - a) being discussed
 - b) discussing
 - c) having been discussed
14. I heard the child ... something from the opposite side of the room, but I pretended not to hear.
 - a) shouting

- b) having shouted
 - c) shouted
15. ... as a child psychologist before, Anna knew every developmental stage.
- a) Having worked
 - b) Working
 - c) Worked
16. ... unwell, the child decided to stay away from the group activity.
- a) Felt
 - b) Having felt
 - c) Feeling
17. ... to observe as much as possible of the children's interaction, we set up cameras.
- a) Wishing
 - b) Wished
 - c) Having wished
18. Analyzing the data, the researcher had a ... feeling of success and mild uncertainty.
- a) mixing
 - b) being mixed
 - c) mixed
19. control of the experiment with the children, the researcher had to stop.
- a) Having lost
 - b) Losing
 - c) Being lost
20. She turned to me for help, ... how to interpret the child's drawing.
- a) not having known
 - b) not being known
 - c) not knowing

Unit 19. The Absolute Participle Construction

Независимый причастный оборот

Независимый (Самостоятельный) причастный оборот — это конструкция, в которой причастие выражает действие, не относящееся к лицу (или предмету), обозначенному подлежащим предложения. В таких оборотах причастие как бы имеет свое собственное подлежащее:

The student knowing the subject well, the exam was passed successfully.
= **Так как студент знал предмет хорошо**, экзамен был сдан успешно.

The letter having been written, he went out to post it. = **После того, как письмо было написано**, он пошёл на почту отправить его.

Абсолютный причастный оборот, являясь формально независимым от предложения, выполняет функцию обстоятельства времени, причины или условия, и переводится на русский язык обстоятельственным придаточным предложением, начинаясь со слов: *так как; хотя (причем...); когда; после того, как ...*

Значение самостоятельного причастного оборота определяется контекстом. Чаще всего такой оборот выражает:

- время (соответствует придаточному предложению времени): *The sun having set*, they decided to go back home. = **После того, как солнце село**, они решили вернуться домой.
- причину (соответствует придаточному предложению причины): *The weather being nice*, we decided to have a picnic. = **Так как погода была хорошей**, мы решили устроить пикник.
- условие (соответствует придаточному предложению условия): *Weather permitting (If the weather permits)*, we will go hiking this weekend. = **Если погода позволит**, мы пойдем в поход в эти выходные.

Самостоятельные причастные обороты могут соответствовать придаточным предложениям с оборотом **there is** и предложениям с формальным подлежащим **it**. В таких причастных оборотах перед причастием стоит соответственно *there* или *it*:

There being no other options, they decided to stay at the hotel. = **Так как не было других вариантов**, они решили остаться в отеле.

It being Sunday, the library was closed. = **Так как было воскресенье**, библиотека была закрыта.

В независимых причастных оборотах встречаются все формы причастия активного и пассивного залога. Past Participle встречаются реже других форм. Независимый причастный оборот с Past Participle чаще всего выражает время:

The project finished, she decided to take a break. = После того, как проект был завершен, она решила сделать перерыв.

The signal given, the train started. = После того, как сигнал был дан, поезд отошел.

**Примеры всех форм причастия
в независимом причастном обороте**

Participle	The Absolute Participle Construction	Пример	Перевод
Present Participle Active	The sun shining brightly	<i>The sun shining brightly, we went for a walk.</i>	<i>Так как солнце ярко светило, мы пошли гулять.</i>
Present Participle Passive	The work being done	<i>The work being done, the manager checked the reports.</i>	<i>В то время как работа выполнялась, менеджер проверял отчёты.</i>
Past Participle	The work done	<i>The work done, the manager went home.</i>	<i>Когда работа была сделана, управляющий ушел домой.</i>
Perfect Participle Active	The sun having risen	<i>The sun having risen, they continued their way.</i>	<i>После того, как взошло солнце, они продолжили свой путь.</i>
Perfect Participle Passive	The preparations having been finished	<i>The preparations having been finished, the chef started cooking.</i>	<i>Когда все приготовления были окончены, шеф-повар начал готовить.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Read the following sentences, in which the Absolute Participle Construction is used at the beginning of the sentence. Translate them into Russian.

1. The experiment being over, the participants were asked questions.
2. The instructions being clear, the subjects started the task immediately.
3. A memory being emotionally charged, it is often recalled more vividly.
4. The first stage of the research having been completed; the data was sent for analysis.
5. The lecture being very engaging, the students listened with great interest.

6. The cognitive task being too difficult, some participants asked for help.
7. Most of the data having been collected, the researchers began the statistical analysis.
8. The attention span being limited, the psychologist designed short exercises.

Ex.2 Read the following sentences in which the Absolute Participle Construction is used at the end of the sentence. Translate them into Russian.

1. The psychologist presented several theories, one of them being the James-Lange theory.
2. The researcher described two types of memory, short-term memory being one of them.
3. The professor explained the theory of perception, his words being supported by visual examples.
4. The study was discussed in the lab, many students taking part in the discussion.
5. Many principles of behaviorism apply here, the concept of reinforcement being the most relevant.
6. We can study different aspects of the mind, consciousness being the most complex one.

Ex.3 Read the following sentences, translate them paying attention to the place of the Absolute Participle Construction.

1. The therapy session having ended, the client felt relieved.
2. Cognitive psychology is a major school of thought, it being developed in the mid-20th century.
3. Nobody having any objections, the experiment proceeded.
4. The psychological test being very popular, it was difficult to get an appointment.
5. Most students in the faculty study Freud, many of them being fond of his dream theory.
6. The therapist having provided the necessary tools, the patient began to feel better.
7. The lectures being over, the students went to the library.
8. My friend having read a book on emotions, I asked him to share the main ideas.
9. The key concept having been explained, everyone understood the theory better.

Ex.4 Translate the sentences with the Participle in Absolute Constructions into Russian and comment on their form.

1. The room being quiet, the participant could concentrate fully.
2. The book being about cognitive biases, many people find it useful.
3. The final survey having been completed; the researchers began to analyze the results.
4. We observed the behavior, the subject being unaware of it.
5. The test having been finished, he handed it to the psychologist and left the room.
6. They having arrived early for the session, they had time to relax.
7. The group decided to continue the discussion, the topic being very interesting.
8. The university library subscribing to all the major journals, we can access the latest research.
9. The stimulus being removed, the reaction faded.
10. Many scientists contributed to behaviorism, the most famous being B.F. Skinner.
11. Numerous studies having been conducted on sleep; it became possible to understand its role in memory.
12. Freud having published his main works; the foundation of psychoanalysis was laid.
13. William James wrote about habits, this concept being a key part of his philosophy.
14. A new emotion being identified, it is important to describe its functions.
15. The method of introspection having been developed, a new era in psychology began.
16. The patient's motivation lasting only for a short time, the therapist had to adjust the approach.
17. The early experiments were very simple, the equipment being placed on a small table.
18. Research methods having become more sophisticated, psychology achieved greater scientific status.
19. Cognitive psychology having emerged, the study of mental processes began to develop rapidly.
20. By the 1950s, the number of psychological schools had grown significantly, no other science having ever developed so many approaches so quickly.

Ex.5 Match the sentences (A)–(D) with the meanings (1)–(4).

Sentences:

- A) The lights having been turned off, the house looked empty.
- B) His friends being late, Tom decided to start without them.
- C) The work finished, they left the office.
- D) It being Sunday, the shops were closed.

Meanings:

- 1. Because it was Sunday
- 2. After the work was finished
- 3. Because his friends were late
- 4. After the lights had been turned off

Ex.6 Complete each sentence with your own idea.

- 1. The door locked, _____.
- 2. His report having been checked, _____.
- 3. The sun shining brightly, _____.
- 4. The children being tired, _____.
- 5. The luggage having been taken to the storage room, _____.

Ex.7 Rewrite the sentences using an Absolute Participial Construction (use Participle I, II, or Perfect Participle where appropriate).

Example: As it was very noisy, we couldn't hear each other. → It being very noisy, we couldn't hear each other.

- 1. After the thief had been caught, the neighbors felt safe again.
- 2. Because her parents were abroad, she spent the holidays with her aunt.
- 3. Since the sun had risen, the birds began to sing.
- 4. As the door was locked, we had to use the back entrance.
- 5. After the report had been checked, the manager signed it.
- 6. When his speech was finished, the audience applauded loudly.
- 7. Since the main road was closed, we took a detour.
- 8. After the lights had been turned off, the city looked quiet and empty.
- 9. As the car was damaged, we couldn't continue our trip.
- 10. When her suitcase was packed, she called a taxi.
- 11. Since it was getting dark, they hurried to find a place to stay.
- 12. When all the guests had left, the house became silent.

Ex.8 Choose the correct translation.

1. The meeting finished, everyone left the room.
 - a) Когда совещание закончилось, все вышли из комнаты.
 - b) Пока совещание заканчивалось, все выходили из комнаты.
 - c) Хотя совещание закончилось, все вышли из комнаты.

2. It being Sunday, the shops were closed.
 - a) Несмотря на воскресенье, магазины были закрыты.
 - b) Так как было воскресенье, магазины были закрыты.
 - c) Магазины закрылись, и наступило воскресенье.

3. Her homework having been finished, she went to meet her friends.
 - a) До того как закончить домашнее задание, она встретилась с друзьями.
 - b) После того как она закончила домашнее задание, она пошла встретиться с друзьями.
 - c) Так как она встретилась с друзьями, домашнее задание было закончено.

4. The road being icy, the driver slowed down.
 - a) Так как дорога была скользкой, водитель сбавил скорость.
 - b) Дорога стала скользкой после того, как водитель сбавил скорость.
 - c) Несмотря на скользкую дорогу, водитель сбавил скорость.

5. The report having been checked, the manager signed it.
 - a) Менеджер подписал отчёт, не проверив его.
 - b) Менеджер подпишет отчет после того, как его проверят.
 - c) После того как отчёт проверили, менеджер его подписал.

6. The sun having set, the village grew quiet.
 - a) После того как солнце село, деревня стихла.
 - b) Когда солнце садилось, деревня постепенно затихала.
 - c) До того как солнце село, деревня затихла.

7. His car broken down, he had to walk to the nearest town.
 - a) Так как его машина сломалась, ему пришлось идти пешком до ближайшего города.

- b) До того как машина сломалась, он решил сходить пешком в город.
 c) Его машина сломалась после того, как он пошел пешком в город.
8. The guests having left, the host finally relaxed.
 a) Гости уходили, хозяин отдыхал.
 b) После того как гости ушли, хозяин наконец-то расслабился.
 c) После того как хозяин расслабился, гости ушли.
9. It being dark, they decided to stay where they were.
 a) Так как было темно, они решили остаться на месте.
 b) Несмотря на темноту, они решили остаться на месте.
 c) Когда стемнело, они решили уйти туда, где они были.
10. The signal having been given, the race began.
 a) Гонка началась до того, как подали сигнал.
 b) В то время как подавали сигнал, гонка началась.
 c) После того как подали сигнал, гонка началась.

Ex.9 Translate the sentences into English, use the Absolute Participle Construction.

1. Так как погода была прекрасная, мы решили провести эксперимент на улице.
2. Так как было воскресенье, кабинет психолога был закрыт.
3. Когда лекция по теории эмоций окончилась, студенты начали обсуждать ее.
4. Существует много теорий памяти, причем данная теория — самая современная.
5. Если задание будет таким сложным, вам придется задействовать все свое внимание.
6. Так как мое внимание было рассеянным, я пропустил важную деталь.

Ex.10 Translate the sentences into English, use the Absolute Participle Construction.

1. Так как основной стресс прошел, пациент смог ясно мыслить.
2. Эксперимент был завершен, и исследователи начали анализировать данные.

3. Так как все тесты были проведены, у нас появилось много материала для изучения.
4. Психолог наблюдал за поведением, а участники в это время выполняли задачу.
5. Его тревога уменьшилась, и дыхание стало более ровным.
6. Преподаватель объяснил концепцию, и студенты, наконец, поняли ее.
7. Студенты работали над проектом, и их настроение постепенно улучшалось.

Unit 20. The Gerund

Герундий

Герундий представляет собой неличную форму глагола, выражающую название действия и обладающую как свойствами глагола, так и свойствами существительного. В русском языке нет формы, соответствующей герундию. Герундий в английском языке ближе всего по значению с отглагольным существительным в русском языке.

Обладая свойствами существительного, герундий выполняет в предложении функции этой части речи, и может служить в предложении:

- подлежащим: **Drawing** is my favourite hobby. = Рисование — это моё любимое занятие.
- именной частью составного сказуемого: My favourite hobby **is drawing**. = Моё самое любимое занятие — это рисование.
- дополнением: I am fond of drawing. = Я люблю **рисование** (рисовать).

Герундий может сочетаться с предлогами и определяться притяжательным местоимением или существительным в притяжательном падеже: I think **of going** to the concert this Saturday. = Я думаю сходить на концерт в эту субботу.

We **insist on their taking part** in negotiations. = Мы настаиваем на том, чтобы они приняли участие в переговорах.

Отрицательная форма герундия образуется при помощи частицы **not**, которая ставится перед герундием: **Not lying** is the best thing to do. = Не врать — самое лучшее, что можно сделать.

Глагольные свойства герундия, как и других неличных форм глагола выражаются в следующем:

- герундий может иметь прямое дополнение: She enjoys **playing the piano**. = Она любит играть на пианино (здесь the piano является прямым дополнением к герундию playing).
- герундий может определяться наречием: He is afraid of **driving fast**. = Он боится ездить быстро (здесь fast является наречием, которое определяет герундий driving).

Герундий переводится на русский язык различными способами: существительным, инфинитивом, деепричастием, глаголом в личной форме:

Reading is useful. = **Чтение** (существительное) полезно.

He likes **reading**. = Ему нравится **читать** (инфинитив).

She went out **without saying** a word. = Она вышла, **не сказав** (деепричастие) ни слова.

I remember **reading** this book. = Я помню, что **читал** (глагол в личной форме) эту книгу.

Герундий имеет формы времени и залога. Как и у других неличных форм глагола, время, выраженное герундием, имеет относительное значение, т.е. формы времени герундия обычно выражают действие, как одновременное, так и предшествующее по отношению к действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме:

<i>Формы</i>	<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Indefinite / Simple Gerund</i> (одновременное действие)	<i>She enjoys reading books.</i>	Ей нравится читать книги.	<i>Children like being read stories before bed.</i>	Детям нравится, когда им читают сказки перед сном.
<i>Perfect Gerund</i> (предшествующее действие)	<i>She regretted having said that.</i>	Она пожалела, что сказала это.	<i>She admitted having been told the secret.</i>	Она призналась, что ей рассказали секрет.

Примечания:

* В некоторых случаях герундий в форме Active употребляется со значением герундия в форме Passive после глаголов *to need, to want, to require* (нуждаться, требоваться), *to deserve* (заслуживать) и после прилагательных *worth* (стоящий), *busy* (занятый) с глаголом-связкой *to be*:

The car needs washing. = Машину нужно помыть. (= Машина нуждается в том, чтобы её помыли.)

The film is worth watching. = Этот фильм стоит посмотреть.

He was busy translating an article. = Он был занят переводом статьи.

** *Indefinite Gerund*, а не *Perfect Gerund*, употребляется:

- после предлогов *on (upon), without* и *after*, хотя в этих случаях действие, выраженное герундием, предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме:

On arriving at the station, I called my friend. = Прибыв на станцию, я позвонил своему другу.

He left the room without waiting the answer. = Он вышел из комнаты, не ожидая ответа.

- когда нет необходимости подчеркнуть, что действие, выраженное герундием, предшествовало действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме:

I thank you for coming (not: *for having come*). = Благодарю вас, что вы пришли.

He apologized for leaving the door open (not: *for having left the door open*). = Он извинился, что оставил дверь открытой.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Rephrase the sentences using the gerund in the passive form.

*Example: I like **visiting** other people. → I like **being visited** by other people.*

1. He hates criticizing people. → He hates _____ by people.
2. She remembers telling him the story. → She remembers _____ the story.
3. We appreciate inviting us to the party. → We appreciate _____ to the party.
4. The children love amusing the clowns. → The children love _____ by the clowns.
5. I can't stand ignoring people. → I can't stand _____.

Ex.2 Rephrase the sentences using the Perfect Gerund (Active or Passive).

*Example: Active: He admitted that he had taken the money. → He admitted **having taken** the money.*

*Passive: She was proud that she had been elected. → She was proud of **having been elected**.*

1. I forgot that I had locked the door. → I forgot _____ the door.
2. The manager confirmed that the report had been sent. → The manager confirmed _____.
3. She regretted that she had said those words. → She regretted _____ those words.
4. He was annoyed that he had been woken up so early. → He was annoyed at _____ so early.
5. He mentioned that he had worked abroad. → He mentioned _____ abroad.
6. She thanked them for the fact that she had been invited. → She thanked them for _____.
7. He was accused of the fact that he had stolen the car. → He was accused of _____ the car.
8. I don't remember that anyone has told me about it. → I don't remember _____ about it.
9. She celebrated the fact that she had been promoted. → She celebrated _____.

Ex.3 Put the verb in brackets into the correct gerund form.

Active Indefinite → doing

Passive Indefinite → being done

Perfect Active → having done

Perfect Passive → having been done

1. She denied _____ (cheat) during the exam.
2. On (upon) _____ (read) the letter, she burst into tears.
3. He is proud of _____ (complete) such a difficult task.
4. After _____ (finish) his report, the audience asked questions.
5. I regret _____ (say) those words to her yesterday.
6. Without _____ (read) the instructions, he couldn't assemble the model.
7. The children were excited about _____ (see) a new film.
8. She denies _____ (break) the rule.
9. She was proud of _____ (be chosen) to represent her university at the international conference.
10. He was tired of _____ (be asked) the same question again and again.
11. He is afraid of _____ (be forgotten).
12. She remembered _____ (be told) that story when she was little.
13. She regretted _____ (send) the email before checking it.
14. He regretted _____ (be told) the truth — sometimes ignorance is bliss.
15. They were praised for _____ (finish) the project before the deadline.
16. After _____ (be criticized) by the manager, the employees returned to work.
17. The article deserves _____ (read) carefully.
18. The students complained about _____ (be treated) unfairly.
19. He insists on _____ (be informed) about every decision.
20. She apologized for _____ (arrive) late to the interview.
21. They were grateful for _____ (be given) a second chance last year.
22. Without _____ (give) any notice, she left the company.
23. The manager was angry _____ (not / be informed) about the issue earlier.

Ex.4 Use the correct form of the gerund (Active / Passive / Perfect / Perfect Passive).

Example: After a long day at work, Emily likes to do something relaxing. She often paints, listens to music, or reads. She enjoys _____ (paint) in the evening. → *She enjoys **painting** in the evening.*

1. Paul often helps his younger brother with homework.
He doesn't mind _____ (spend) extra time on math problems.
2. The experiment was dangerous, but everything went well.
After _____ (prepare) carefully, the materials were finally tested.
3. Kate hates it when people interrupt her during meetings.
She dislikes _____ (interrupt) when she's speaking.
4. Some students get nervous when the teacher asks them to speak in public.
They are afraid of _____ (ask) in front of the whole class.
5. Nick didn't check the address before leaving home, so he got lost.
Without _____ (check) the address, he couldn't find the restaurant.
6. Yesterday, Mike forgot to lock the door, and later he realized his mistake.
He regretted _____ (forget to lock) the door.
7. Emma finally apologized to her colleague for something she said during the meeting.
She apologized for _____ (be) rude.
8. When Sarah finished her final exam, she felt great relief.
After _____ (finish) the test, she went to celebrate with her friends.
9. Liam received an award for a design he created last year.
He is proud of _____ (recognize) for his creativity.
10. After many interviews, Anna finally got the job.
She was happy about _____ (choose) for the position.
11. The artist was proud. His work had been displayed at the National Gallery for the first time in his life.
He was proud of _____ (exhibit) at the National Gallery.
12. The children were excited because they were going to visit the zoo the next day.
They were looking forward to _____ (see) the animals.
13. After she won the scholarship, Julia couldn't believe her luck.
She was grateful for _____ (select) among hundreds of applicants.
14. When Tom heard that he had passed the interview, he immediately called his parents.
On _____ (hear) the news, he phoned his family.
15. He felt embarrassed because he had shouted at his friend earlier.
He regretted _____ (speak) so angrily.
16. Sophie came home late and immediately turned on the TV.
On _____ (start) the movie, she forgot about everything else.
17. Mark felt honoured. The CEO had personally invited him to speak at the international conference.
He felt honoured at _____ (invite) to speak at the event.

Ex.5 Translate the gerund from Russian into English.

1. She felt proud of _____ (установив) the record for fastest completion of the task.
2. He apologized for _____ (объяснив) incorrectly the instructions incorrectly to his team.
3. The children were afraid of _____ (быть наказанными) by the teacher for their mistakes.
4. I enjoy _____ (пробовать) new recipes on weekends.
5. After the presentation, she was happy about _____ (оценённой) positively by the board.
6. They complained about _____ (игнорировали) during the meeting.
7. On arriving at the hotel, he was surprised at _____ (получил) such a warm welcome.
8. She thanked her colleague for _____ (подготовив) her report in time.
9. He is tired of _____ (выполнять) the same task every day.
10. After the training, they were proud of _____ (выполненными) all the assignments correctly.

Употребление герундия в различных функциях

Наиболее часто герундий употребляется после предлогов в функции предложного косвенного дополнения, определения, обстоятельства и именной части сказуемого.

Без предшествующего предлога герундий употребляется как часть составного глагольного сказуемого, а также в функции именной части сказуемого, подлежащего и прямого дополнения.

Функция	Глаголы, прилагательные, причастия, после которых употребляется герундий	Примеры	Перевод
подлежащее	Герундий, выполняющий функцию подлежащего, может стоять как перед сказуемым, так и после сказуемого.	Swimming helps me relax after work. Learning languages requires patience.	Плавание помогает мне расслабиться после работы. Изучение языков требует терпения.

	<p>В последнем случае перед сказуемым стоит формальное подлежащее <i>it</i> в сочетаниях: <i>it is (of) no use</i> <i>it is useless</i> <i>бесполезно</i> <i>it is no good</i> <i>it is worth while stoum</i> <i>(потраченного времени)</i></p>	<p>It is no use trying to convince him. It is useless waiting for the bus; it won't come. It is no good complaining about the situation. It is worth while studying for the exam.</p>	<p>Бесполезно пытаться его убедить. Бесполезно ждать автобус; он не придёт. Нет смысла жаловаться на ситуацию. Стоит потратить время на подготовку к экзамену.</p>
<p>предложное косвенное дополнение</p>	<p>to accuse of to approve / disapprove) of to be afraid of* to be capable (incapable) of to be disappointed at* to be engaged in to be fond of to be interested in to be proud of* to be surprised at* to consist in to count on (upon) to depend on (upon) to get used to to hear of to inform of to insist on to object to to prevent from to persist in to result in to spend in to succeed in to suspect of to think of</p>	<p>He was accused in having broken the law. They succeeded in studying psychology. She insisted in repeating the material. She can't get used to living in a big city. He was surprised when he heard of her quitting her job. He was informed of her coming. True happiness consists in enjoying simple things. You can count on getting a quick answer. Success depends on working hard. He objects to coming here every day. How can I prevent her from going there?</p>	<p>Его обвинили в нарушении закона. Они добились успеха в изучении психологии. Она настояла на повторении материала. Она не может привыкнуть жить в большом городе. Он удивился, когда услышал, что она увольняется. Его проинформировали о её приезде. Истинное счастье заключается в умении наслаждаться простыми вещами. Ты можешь рассчитывать на быстрый ответ. Успех зависит от усердной работы. Он возражает против того, чтобы приходиться сюда ежедневно. Как могу я помешать ей пойти туда?</p>

	с предлогом for со значением за, для (на вопрос <i>for what? за что? для чего?</i>)	The boy was punished for breaking the window. This truck is used for transporting heavy loads.	Мальчика наказали за разбитое окно. Этот грузовик используется для перевозки тяжелых грузов.	
	с предлогом in со значением в после различных существительных (на вопрос <i>in what? в чем?</i>)	She has a strong interest in learning new languages. Their success in solving complex problems is impressive.	У нее сильный интерес в изучении новых языков. Их успех в решении сложных задач впечатляет.	
	* После to be disappointed, to be proud, to be surprised, to be afraid употребляется как герундий, так и инфинитив	*She was disappointed at not getting the job (с герундием). She was disappointed to hear the news (с инфинитивом). He is proud of being chosen as captain (с герундием). He is proud to be part of this team (с инфинитивом). She is afraid of flying (с герундием). She was afraid to speak in public (с инфинитивом). They were surprised at finding the door open (с герундием). They were surprised to see him at the party (с инфинитивом).	Ей было обидно из-за того, что она не получила работу. Ей было неприятно услышать эту новость. Он гордится тем, что его выбрали капитаном. Он горд быть частью этой команды. Она боится летать. Она боялась выступать на публике. Они удивились, обнаружив открытую дверь. Они удивились, увидев его на вечеринке.	
определение (после существительных с предлогом)	art of chance of* difficulty in experience in habit of harm of idea of importance of intention of* interest in means of* mistake of necessity (of)*	opportunity of* plan for point in; of possibility of* preparation for process of purpose of reason for right of sense of skill in way of*	We discussed different methods of teaching foreign languages. The harm of smoking is well known. The idea of going on a trip excites everyone. Importance of exercising regularly. His intention of leaving early was clear.	Мы обсуждали различные методы обучения иностранным языкам. Вред курения хорошо известен. Идея поехать в путешествие вдохновляет всех. Важность регулярных физических упражнений. Его намерение уйти рано было ясно.

			<p>The means of solving the problem quickly are limited.</p> <p>The mistake of forgetting the appointment cost him dearly.</p>	<p>Средства для быстрого решения проблемы ограничены.</p> <p>Ошибка забыть о встрече дорого ему обошлась.</p>
	<p>* В функции дополнения после существительных <i>chance, opportunity, intention, means, necessity, possibility, way</i> наряду с герундием употребляется инфинитив</p>	<p><i>Герундий</i>: There is a good chance of winning the game.</p> <p><i>Инфинитив</i>: We have the chance to win the game.</p> <p><i>Герундий</i>: His intention of leaving early was clear.</p> <p><i>Инфинитив</i>: He expressed his intention to leave early.</p>	<p>Есть хорошая возможность выиграть игру.</p> <p>У нас есть возможность выиграть игру.</p> <p>Его намерение уйти рано было ясно.</p> <p>Он выразил свое намерение уйти рано.</p>	
обстоятельство	<p>— с предлогами on (<i>upon</i>) (<i>по, после</i>), after (<i>после</i>), before (<i>перед</i>), in (<i>в то время как, при</i>) для выражения времени (обычно употребляется Indefinite Gerund)</p>	<p>On reading the instructions, he realized his mistake.</p> <p>After finishing his homework, he went out to play.</p> <p>Before leaving for London, he called me.</p> <p>In working on the project, he faced many challenges.</p>	<p>Прочитав инструкции (После прочтения инструкции), он понял свою ошибку.</p> <p>Закончив домашнее задание, он вышел играть.</p> <p>Перед отъездом в Лондон он позвонил мне.</p> <p>Работая над проектом, он столкнулся с множеством трудностей.</p>	
	<p>— с предлогом by (<i>путем, при помощи</i>) на вопрос: <i>каким образом? чем?</i> для выражения образа действия</p>	<p>He improved his skills by practicing every day.</p>	<p>Он улучшил свои навыки, практикуясь каждый день.</p>	
	<p>— с предлогами besides <i>кроме</i>, instead of <i>вместо</i>, without <i>без</i> (<i>отрицательное значение</i>), apart from <i>помимо</i> для выражения сопутствующих обстоятельств</p>	<p>Besides studying, she also works part-time.</p> <p>Instead of going to the cinema, we stayed at home.</p> <p>Apart from playing the guitar, he also sings well.</p> <p>She left the house without saying goodbye.</p>	<p>Помимо учебы, она также работает неполный рабочий день.</p> <p>Вместо того чтобы пойти в кино, мы остались дома.</p> <p>Помимо игры на гитаре, он также хорошо поет.</p> <p>Она ушла из дома, не попрощавшись.</p>	

<p>именная часть сказуемого</p>	<p>- с глаголом-связкой to be</p> <p>- с предлогами <i>against против, for за</i>, а также с предлогами, зависящими от выражений <i>to be on point (of), to be far (from)</i> и др.</p>	<p>Her greatest pleasure <i>was travelling</i>.</p> <p>His actions are <i>against</i> helping others.</p> <p>The plan is <i>for</i> improving the system.</p> <p>When I came to the office, the manager was <i>on the point of</i> leaving.</p> <p>The negotiations are still <i>far from</i> being ended.</p>	<p>Самым большим удовольствием для нее было путешествовать.</p> <p>Его действия направлены против помощи другим.</p> <p>План направлен на улучшение системы.</p> <p>Когда я пришел в офис, управляющий как раз собирался уходить.</p> <p>Переговоры ещё далеки от завершения.</p>		
<p>часть составного глагольного сказуемого</p>	<p>глаголы, в сочетании с которыми герундий образует составное глагольное сказуемое</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td> <p>avoid can't help consider delay deny escape exclude excuse fancy finish forgive give up go on involve justify</p> </td> <td> <p>keep, keep on, mind miss postpone practice recall recollect resent risk spend / waste time stop want (требоваться) waste</p> </td> </tr> </table>	<p>avoid can't help consider delay deny escape exclude excuse fancy finish forgive give up go on involve justify</p>	<p>keep, keep on, mind miss postpone practice recall recollect resent risk spend / waste time stop want (требоваться) waste</p>	<p><i>I can't help feeling</i> nervous before an exam.</p> <p>They are <i>considering moving</i> to a new city.</p> <p>We had to <i>delay starting</i> the project.</p> <p>He couldn't <i>justify spending</i> so much money on unnecessary things.</p> <p>Do you <i>mind</i> me <i>opening</i> the window?</p> <p>He <i>risked losing</i> everything.</p> <p>She <i>spends hours reading</i> books every day.</p> <p>Don't <i>waste time arguing</i> about trivial matters.</p> <p>The house <i>wants (needs, requires) painting</i>.</p>	<p>Я не могу не чувствовать нервозность перед экзаменом.</p> <p>Они рассматривают возможность переезда в новый город.</p> <p>Нам пришлось отложить запуск проекта.</p> <p>Он не мог оправдать трату так много денег на ненужные вещи.</p> <p>Ты не возражаешь, если я открою окно?</p> <p>Он рискнул потерять всё.</p> <p>Она проводит часы, читая книги каждый день.</p> <p>Не трать зря время на споры о мелочах.</p> <p>Дому требуется покраска.</p>
<p>avoid can't help consider delay deny escape exclude excuse fancy finish forgive give up go on involve justify</p>	<p>keep, keep on, mind miss postpone practice recall recollect resent risk spend / waste time stop want (требоваться) waste</p>				

прямое допол- нение	После глаголов to mention* <i>упоминать</i> , to remember* <i>помнить</i> , to mind <i>возражать</i> , to suggest <i>предлагать</i> *После глаголов to mention и to remember вместо Perfect Gerund часто употребляется Present Gerund: <i>He mentioned</i> reading it in the paper. I remember being asked <i>about it.</i>	She mentioned seeing him at the concert. I remember visiting this place when I was a child. I don't mind waiting . He suggested going to the cinema.	Она упомянула, что видела его на кон- церте. Я помню, что по- сещал это место в детстве. Я не против подо- ждать. Он предложил пой- ти в кино.
---------------------------	---	--	---

Примечания:

- После глаголов **come, go** часто используется герундий, связанный с активностью вне дома (*climbing, driving, fishing, riding, sailing, shopping, skiing, walking, hiking, jogging*):

Let's go shopping. = Пойдем за покупками.

Why don't you come skiing with us? = Почему бы тебе не покататься с нами на лыжах?

She wants to go hiking in the national park. = Она хочет пойти в поход в национальный парк.

- «**Be used to + герундий/существительное**» описывает то, к чему вы привыкли в результате опыта, и что для вас теперь не является странным или трудным. Это может быть актуально и в настоящем:

I am used to living in London. (Я привык жить в Лондоне. Мне здесь комфортно, я знаю, как тут все устроено.)

He wasn't used to driving on the left side of the road. = Ему было непривычно ездить по левой стороне дороги.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Translate the sentences into Russian using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject

- Training attention allows you to be more productive.
- Doing memory exercises is very useful.
- There's no sense in worrying anymore.
- Now it's impossible to stop her from practicing.
- His improvement in memory was a surprise to everyone.
- Arguing with him about perception is useless.

7. It's great to spend time developing observation skills.
8. There's no difference whether she comes to the psychology class or not.
9. You never know what will help you remember information better.
10. It's useless to ignore your feelings.
11. Improving concentration was very important.
12. Practicing mindfulness is a pleasant activity.

Ex.2 Paraphrase the sentences using the gerund in the function of the subject.

Example: It is harmful to ignore your feelings. → Ignoring your feelings is harmful.

1. It is difficult to focus attention for a long time.
2. It is useful to train your memory regularly.
3. It is bad to suppress emotions constantly.
4. It was helpful to learn relaxation techniques.
5. It is challenging to change thinking habits.
6. It was a big mistake to ignore the signs of stress.
7. It interests him to study how perception works.
8. It is unwise to avoid dealing with anxiety.
9. It is impossible to forget some childhood memories completely.
10. It is not easy to improve concentration quickly.

Ex.3 Complete the following sentences using the gerund in the function of the subject

1. ...is good for your mental health.
2. ...helps improve memory.
3. ...was difficult for his brain.
4. ...is useful for attention training.
5. ...is a new experience for my perception.
6. ...is out of the question now.
7. ...is boring but necessary.
8. ...was his favorite mental exercise.
9. ...is beneficial for cognitive functions.
10. ...is important for emotional balance.

Ex.4 Translate the sentences into Russian using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as a predicative.

1. My favorite activity is swimming in the ocean. 2. The public's anger is against building a factory so close to the school. 3. His only mistake was trusting the wrong person. 4. The hardest part of the job is dealing with angry customers. 5. I am all for giving people a second chance. 6. For me, true happiness is reading a good book by the fireplace. 7. Her speech was powerfully against cutting funds for education. 8. The best form of exercise is walking. 9. Her main goal for the year is improving her French. 10. She was on the point of resigning when she got the promotion. 11. One of the dangers here is swimming alone. 12. I'm far from blaming you for what happened; it was just bad luck. 13. My morning routine is drinking coffee and checking the news. 14. The company's official position is for supporting local charities. 15. He was on the point of revealing the secret but stopped himself. 16. The key to success is never giving up. 17. A politician's job is serving the public.

Ex.5 Paraphrase the sentences using the gerund in the function of predicative.

Example: To collect ancient coins is what fascinates him most. → His greatest fascination is collecting ancient coins.

1. To walk the dog in the park is your very responsible task.
2. The community protested against because they didn't want the city to demolish the historic building.
3. To listen to your partner is the key of a strong relationship.
4. The chef's secret was that he used fresh herbs.
5. The company's official statement supported the new policy.
6. The main rule for a hiker is that you must respect the wilderness.
7. Her biggest fear was that she would fail the exam.
8. To solve complex puzzles is what this club is for.
9. The most challenging part of his job was that he had to manage a large team.
10. My goal for this year is to learn how to code.

Ex.6 Complete the sentences using a gerund as a predicative.

1. The best method was...
2. Her main goal was...
3. The most important thing is...

4. His next step will be...
5. Her principle was...
6. The main task is...
7. The best approach will be...
8. Their only mental exercise was...
9. My dream was...
10. My friend's hobby was...

Ex.7 Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. The art of telling a good story is a valuable skill.
2. Is there any possibility of getting tickets for the concert?
3. He has a lot of experience in managing large projects.
4. Her bad habit of biting her nails is hard to break.
5. The teacher spoke about the importance of doing your homework regularly.
6. I have no intention of moving to another city.
7. He showed a great interest in learning Russian history.
8. A bicycle is a cheap means of getting around the city.
9. The process of applying for a visa can be quite long.
10. Meditation is one way of reducing stress.

Ex.8 Complete the following sentences logically using the gerund in the function of an attribute. Use the prompts with necessary prepositions.

Example: Situation: My grandmother has painted every day for 50 years. She really knows how to work with watercolors (**has experience / in**). → Conclusion: She **has a lot of experience in painting** with watercolors.

art of	fear of	intention of	possibility of	preparation for	difficulty in	habit of	way of
-----------	------------	-----------------	-------------------	--------------------	------------------	----------	--------

1. Situation: John never backs down from a challenge, even a complex mathematical problem.
Conclusion: John has no ... (tackle) difficult tasks.
2. Situation: We need to book our flights months in advance; otherwise, all the cheap seats will be gone.
Conclusion: There is a high ... (lose) out on good prices if we wait.

3. Situation: Maria can calm down even the most upset client. It's like a superpower.
Conclusion: Maria has mastered the ... (calm) people down.
4. Situation: This new software is not very user-friendly. I'm finding it very hard to understand its basic functions.
Conclusion: I am having great ... (understand) the interface.
5. Situation: David has decided to start his own business next year. He has already registered a company name.
Conclusion: David has a clear ... (start) his own enterprise.
6. Situation: Using a password manager is the most effective method to create and store strong, unique passwords for all your accounts.
Conclusion: A password manager is the best ... (manage) your digital security.
7. Situation: The team didn't prepare for the questions about the budget, and the presentation failed because of it.
Conclusion: The team's failure was a direct result of their lack of ... (answer) financial questions.
8. Situation: Sarah reads scientific articles every morning with her coffee. It's a routine she has had for years.
Conclusion: Sarah has a ... (read) academic papers daily.

Ex.9 Complete the following sentences using the gerund in the function of an attribute.

1. She is certain to have an opportunity of...
2. They spoke in the hope of...
3. I have no idea of...
4. What was the reason for...?
5. The students were in the habit of...
6. They had no means of...
7. The only way of...
8. I felt the need of...
9. What were his grounds for...?
10. That was his only chance of...

Ex.10 Open the brackets using gerund as an attribute. Use the necessary preposition.

1. Children have their own way ... (process) information.
2. Peter thought he had no means ... (improve) his memory.
3. There are many advantages ... (train) your brain regularly.
4. Mary thought she had no reason ... (worry) about her attention span.
5. Every beginner finds difficulty ... (focus) for long periods.
6. She concluded she had no hope ... (remember) all the details.
7. What is the sense ... (be) so inattentive?
8. The thought ... (take) the memory test made him nervous.
9. He made no apology ... (enter) the psychology lab without permission.
10. He had the most precious habit ... (notice) small details.

Ex.11 Answer the following why-questions using the gerund with words suggested.

Model: Why don't you try to remember his name? (try) → There's no use trying. My memory is terrible today.

1. Why don't you pay attention to details? (focus)
2. Why don't you practice mindfulness? (practice)
3. Why don't you recognize this pattern? (recognize)
4. Why don't you want to remember that event? (remember)
5. Why don't you improve your observation skills? (practice)
6. Why don't you teach him memory techniques? (teach)
7. Why don't you try to understand different perspectives? (try)

Ex.12 Compose sentences according to the model. Use the gerund after it's no fun, it's great fun, it is (of) no/little use, it's no good, it's a waste of time, there's no, there's no sense, there's no point.

Example: Try to remember everything. → There's no point in trying to remember everything. Our memory has limits.

1. To worry about forgetting small things.
2. To force yourself to concentrate when tired.
3. To resist new sensory experiences.
4. To memorize information without understanding.

5. To analyze every perception in detail.
6. To practice attention exercises alone.
7. To ignore your emotional reactions.
8. To share cognitive strategies.
9. To change your perception of the situation.

Ex.13 Complete the sentences supplying the necessary prepositions and using the gerund of the verbs in brackets.

1. *She was never good ... (remember names). → She was never good at remembering names.*
2. He reproached her ... (not pay attention).
3. John is set ... (improve his memory).
4. In a month he became skillful ... (recognize patterns).
5. Mary insisted ... (practice) daily.
6. I refrained ... (tell) him what I noticed.
7. We are looking forward ... (learn) new perception techniques.
8. She used to blame her friend ... (not help) her with attention training.
9. The teacher objected ... (work) on memory tasks overtime.
10. Are you accusing me ... (forget) important details?
11. They aimed ... (please) everyone with their presentation.
12. Soon they succeeded ... (bring) their attention back.
13. He wasn't surprised ... (see) us at the psychology lecture.
14. He was criticized ... (ignore) emotional signals.

Ex.14 Match parts of the sentences in A and B columns.

Part I.

A	B
1. She avoided	a) finishing the report before lunch.
2. He can't help	b) waiting for the results.
3. They considered	c) eating too much sugar.
4. We delayed	d) climbing through the window.
5. He denied	e) listening to the same story again.
6. The thief escaped	f) stealing the money.

Part II.

A	B
1. Please excuse me for	a) running every morning.
2. His job involves	b) disturbing you at this hour.
3. She keeps on	c) being ignored by her colleagues.
4. I recall	d) working on weekends.
5. She resents	e) watering twice a week.
6. This plant wants	f) meeting her in the park yesterday.

Ex.15 Read each short situation and decide what activity (-ing form) fits best.

Part I. "Where are they going?" (go / come + V-ing)

Example: It's a hot, sunny day. They've packed towels and sunglasses. → They're going swimming.

1. He's carrying a backpack and wearing hiking boots. → He's going _____.
2. She invited you to the mountains this weekend. → She wants you to come _____ with her.
3. It's raining, but they left the house with tennis rackets. → They went _____ even though the weather's bad.
4. He hates malls, but today he's with his girlfriend and lots of shopping bags. → He's gone _____.
5. They have snowboards and helmets. → They're going _____ in the Alps next month.

Part II. "What did they catch them doing?" (catch / find / notice / see / observe + object + V-ing). Decide what the complete sentence could be.

Example: The teacher walked into the classroom very quietly. → She found the students cheating.

1. A parent entered the kitchen at midnight. → He caught his son _____.
2. Your friend pointed at the neighbour's window. → You both noticed the man _____.
3. A police officer looked into a parked car. → He saw two teenagers _____.
4. You came home earlier than expected. → You found your dog _____.
5. During the school project, the teacher walked around the room. → He observed the students _____.

Ex.16 Complete the sentences using *be used to* + *gerund* or a *noun*.

Example: She has lived in Norway for five years. She doesn't mind the cold anymore. → She's used to living in cold weather.

1. When Mark moved to Japan, it was very strange for him to eat with chopsticks.
→ He wasn't used to _____ .
2. At first, I couldn't wake up at 6 a.m., but now it's easy.
→ I'm used to _____ .
3. They just got their first cat, so the noise at night still surprises them.
→ They aren't used to _____ .
4. Emma studied online for three years. It's normal for her to work from home.
→ She's used to _____ .
5. I lived in a small village before, so living in a big city was hard at first.
→ I wasn't used to _____ .
6. He's been a teacher for twenty years.
→ He's used to _____ many questions every day.

Ex.17 Translate from Russian into English, using *Gerund*.

1. Студент перестал волноваться и начал выполнять тест.
2. Я предпочитаю изучать психологию в тишине, а не в шумном помещении.
3. Он привык, что его называют экспертом по памяти.
4. Я против того, чтобы этот метод обучения обсуждался без доказательств.
5. Майкл мечтает (dreams of) изучать когнитивную психологию.
6. Он не одобряет (disapproves of), что его студенты читают только популярныe книги по психологии.
7. Они гордятся (are proud of) тем, что им поручили такое сложное задание.

8. Я не против, если Вы будете проходить практику здесь.
9. Я боюсь, что Анна пропустит (miss) важную информацию на лекции...
10. Наши друзья возражали против того, что мы прекращаем (stop) занятия по психологии так скоро.
11. Я не помню, чтобы ты обещал изучить методы концентрации памяти и внимания.
12. Лекцию по психологии внимания стоит послушать.
13. Этот метод не стоит применять без консультации.

Глаголы, после которых употребляется инфинитив

Глагол		Конструкция	Пример	Перевод
to hope	to need	to + V (to see, to be, to go, etc.)	<i>I hope to see you again soon.</i>	Надеюсь увидеть тебя снова.
to promise	to forbid		<i>He promised to be here by 10.</i>	Он пообещал быть здесь к десяти.
to plan	to teach		<i>He promised not to be late.</i>	Он обещал не опоздать.
to decide	to arrange		<i>I would like to have a cup of coffee.</i>	Я бы хотел чашку кофе.
to promise	to learn		<i>We plan to buy a new house.</i>	Мы планируем купить новый дом.
to agree	to afford		<i>I want to visit Paris next year.</i>	Я хочу поехать в Париж в следующем году.
to offer	to manage		<i>He decided to join the team.</i>	Он решил присоединиться к команде.
to refuse	to fail		<i>He refused to pay the bill.</i>	Он отказался оплатить счет.
to pretend	to get		<i>He offered to carry her bag.</i>	Он предложил понести ее сумку.
to ask	to claim			
to expect	tend			
would like	pretend			
to want				

<p>tell someone to advise someone to encourage someone to remind someone to invite someone to permit someone to allow someone to warn someone to require someone to order someone to force someone to ask someone to* expect someone to* would like someone to* want someone to* need someone to*</p>	<p>V** + (pro)noun + to- infinitive</p>	<p><i>He told me to come here.</i> <i>The police ordered the driver to stop.</i></p> <p><i>The doctor advised him to take a rest.</i> <i>The teacher encouraged the students to ask more questions.</i> <i>Please remind her to send the email.</i></p> <p><i>The heavy rain forced us to stay at home.</i> <i>They expect their children to do well at school.</i></p>	<p><i>Он сказал мне прийти сюда.</i> <i>Полиция потребовала, чтобы водитель остановился.</i> <i>Доктор посоветовал ему отдохнуть.</i> <i>Учитель поощрял студентов задавать больше вопросов.</i></p> <p><i>Напомните ей, пожалуйста, отправить почту.</i> <i>Сильный дождь заставил нас остаться дома.</i> <i>Они полагают, что их дети хорошо учатся в школе.</i></p>
---	---	---	--

**Глаголы, после которых употребляется
как герундий, так и инфинитив**

Глаголы	Функция	Gerund	Infinitive	Перевод
to begin, to start	- сказуемое выражает процесс / деятельность	It started raining.	It started to rain.	Пошёл / Начался дождь.
	- сказуемое выражает состояние или ментальную деятельность	-----	I began to feel nervous. He began to realize that his efforts were making a difference.	Я начал нервничать. Он начал осознавать, что его усилия начали приносить свои плоды.
	- подлежащее неодушевленное	-----	The project began to take shape.	Проект начал принимать форму.
to prefer	- предпочтение одного занятия другому (вообще)	I prefer walking to cycling.	-----	Я предпочитаю ходить велосипеда.
	- предпочтение в конкретной ситуации	-----	I prefer to walk rather than cycle.	Я предпочитаю идти пешком, а не ехать на велосипеде (в данное время).

to continue go on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - продолжить начатое действие - переходить к чему-либо в дальнейшем, начав новое действие 	<p>He continued speaking despite the noise. After our friends were gone, we went on talking.</p> <p>-----</p>	<p>He continued to speak despite the noise.</p> <p>-----</p> <p>When the guests finished dinner, Tom went on to talk them about his recent trip to Japan.</p>	<p>Он продолжал говорить не смотря на шум.</p> <p>Когда друзья ушли, мы продолжили разговаривать.</p> <p>Когда гости поужинали, Том перешёл к рассказам о своей недавней поездке в Японию.</p>
to hate (dislike)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - ненавижу/ не люблю всегда, вообще (выражает устойчивое недовольствие от какого-либо занятия) - сожаление о конкретном эпизоде 	<p>I hate being alone on weekends [вообще, всегда].</p> <p>-----</p>	<p>-----</p> <p>I hate to interrupt, but we are late.</p>	<p>Не люблю быть один в выходные.</p> <p>Не хочется Вас беспокоить, но мы опаздываем.</p>
to like (love)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - нравится вообще (выражает устойчивое удовольствие от какого-либо занятия) - подчеркиваем конкретное действие, которое хотим совершить или считаем правильным 	<p>I like cooking.</p> <p>-----</p>	<p>-----</p> <p>I like to cook breakfast myself.</p>	<p>Мне нравится готовить [вообще].</p> <p>Мне нравится готовить завтрак самому.</p>
to try	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - пробовать, экспериментировать - пытаться, стараться что-то сделать 	<p>If you can't lose weight, try doing some sports twice a week.</p> <p>-----</p>	<p>-----</p> <p>Try to get here early.</p>	<p>Если Вы не можете похудеть, попробуйте заниматься спортом 2 раза в неделю.</p> <p>Постарайся быть здесь вовремя.</p>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Read each sentence and choose whether to use *-ing* (gerund) or *to + infinitive*.

Think about the meaning — sometimes both are possible, but the meaning changes!

1. It started _____ (rain), so we stayed inside.
2. I'll never forget _____ (meet) you for the first time.
3. I hate _____ (wait) for people who are always late.
4. I regret _____ (tell) her the truth — she got upset.
5. I prefer _____ (walk) to work rather than take the bus.
6. She continued _____ (talk) even after the teacher asked her to stop.
7. Don't forget _____ (lock) the door before you leave.
8. He tried _____ (open) the window, but it was stuck.
9. I stopped _____ (smoke) last year.
10. He's afraid _____ (tell) her the bad news.
11. Try _____ (add) more salt — it might taste better.
12. I stopped _____ (buy) some bread on my way home.
13. We regret _____ (inform) you that your application was unsuccessful.
14. She went on _____ (talk) about her trip for hours.
15. I hate _____ (be) late for meetings.
16. After explaining the task, the teacher went on _____ (check) the students' work.
17. He's afraid of _____ (fly) after that storm.

Ex.2 Read each situation carefully. Decide what fits best — *gerund* or *infinitive* — and complete the sentence.

1. You're trying to fix your computer, but it doesn't work.
→ I tried _____ (restart) it, but it still didn't help.
2. You suggest a new solution to a friend.
→ Try _____ (turn) it off and on again — it often works!
3. You've decided to stop a bad habit completely.
→ I stopped _____ (eat) junk food last month.
4. You're on your way home, but decide to do something first.
→ I stopped _____ (buy) some fruit on my way.

5. You're afraid that telling the truth will hurt someone's feelings.
→ I'm afraid _____ (tell) her what really happened.
6. You're afraid of spiders in general.
→ I'm afraid of _____ (see) a spider in my room.
7. You remember something you did years ago — a childhood memory.
→ I remember _____ (play) in the garden with my brother.
8. You remind yourself not to forget a task.
→ Remember _____ (call) Grandma tonight!
9. You tell your friend about a sad memory that you regret.
→ I regret _____ (say) those things to her.
10. You're writing a formal email to announce bad news.
→ We regret _____ (inform) you that the concert has been cancelled.

Ex.3 Decide which option makes sense — the gerund or infinitive — and explain what the situation probably means.

1. He stopped reading a book.
It means: a) he got tired of the book?
It means: b) he took a break from walking to read it?
2. She remembered to lock the door.
It means a) she didn't forget"?
It means b) "she recalls the moment"?
3. They tried to open the window.
It means a) "they made an effort"?
It means b) "they experimented"?
4. He went on studying medicine.
It means "he continued the same thing"?
It means "he did the next thing"?

Ex.4 Translate the sentences into English, using the gerund or the infinitive where appropriate.

1. Я помню, как впервые встретил тебя.
2. Не забудь позвонить бабушке вечером.
3. Я никогда не забуду, как катался на слоне в Таиланде.
4. Она

перестала курить два года назад. 5. Она остановилась, чтобы поговорить с соседом. 6. Попробуй добавить немного соли — может, вкус станет лучше. 7. Мы пытались открыть дверь, но она была заперта. 8. Он продолжил говорить, несмотря на шум. 9. После университета он продолжил учиться за границей. 10. Я сожалею, что сказал ей эти слова. 11. Мы с сожалением сообщаем, что рейс отменён. 12. Я боюсь летать на самолётах. 13. Я боюсь сказать ему правду. 14. Я предпочитаю читать вечером, а не смотреть телевизор. 15. Мне не нравится ждать, когда люди опаздывают.

REVISION **(The Gerund)**

Ex.1 Complete the following sentences using the gerund

1. When feeling anxious, she feels like...
2. What prevented you from...?
3. When he was young, he enjoyed...
4. On... the test results, the student felt relieved.
5. James did not mind... helped with his attention problems.
6. When she returned to the memory training, she saw that her concentration needed...
7. The teachers are always pleased...
8. Before... the advanced perception techniques, he had been an average student.
9. The parents are sure to help the child by...
10. Sarah jumped at the chance...

Ex.2 Insert the right preposition.

1. They succeeded ... finding a good memory technique.
2. Can you stop the child ... distracting others during study time.
3. He was accused ... using unreliable psychological methods.
4. I insist ... testing this cognitive theory.
5. I apologize ... forgetting our psychology appointment.
6. I have no practice ... solving complex mental tasks.
7. She kept ... interrupting the meditation session.
8. He is slow ... learning new psychological concepts.
9. He gave up the idea ... ever understanding that theory.
10. He never agreed ... their using that learning approach.

Ex.3 Put the words given below into the right order to make up a sentence.

1. Information, in, sometimes, patterns, we, meaningful, organized, recall.
2. Improves, practicing, regular, memory.
3. Understanding, is, than, none, even, a better, basic.
4. A, memory, if, want, you, good, to practice, regularly, learn.
5. Mind, reading, in, a, do, voice, silent, you, your?
6. No, this, method, was, understanding, there, opportunity, of.
7. Learning, I, don't, technique, before, remember, this.
8. Being, criticized, any, grounds, nobody, without, likes.

Ex.4 Match the parts of the sentences from A and B columns.

A	B
a) It's difficult to keep them	a) maintaining your focus during long sessions
b) Will you please stop	b) practicing mindfulness every day
c) Does your psychology research involve	c) talking during the concentration exercise
d) Do you go on	d) improving our cognitive abilities
e) The aim of memory training is	e) working with attention disorders

Ex.5 Open the brackets and put the appropriate form of the gerund.

1. He remembered (learn) the memory technique.
2. I'm still nervous in spite of (practice) several times.
3. He began his psychology presentation without any (prepare).
4. He complained of (give) too difficult cognitive tasks.
5. The student never gets tired of (ask) the teacher questions.
6. I always treat psychological concepts seriously and I insist on (treat) seriously.
7. Try to forget it, it isn't worth (worry) about.
8. After (hear) the psychology lecture I decided to study more.
9. They can't help (make) mistakes in perception tests.
10. We didn't anticipate (treat) so professionally by the psychologist.

TEST

1. Choose the right form of the Gerund.

1. The psychological concept needs ...
 - a) discussing
 - b) being discussed

- c) having discussed
 - d) having been discussed
2. On ... the psychology lecture she wrote some notes.
 - a) hearing
 - b) being heard
 - c) having heard
 - d) having been heard
 3. Can you remember ... this memory technique before?
 - a) learning
 - b) being learned
 - c) having learned
 - d) having been learned
 4. He hates ... during concentration exercises.
 - a) interrupting
 - b) being interrupted
 - c) having interrupted
 - d) having been interrupted
 5. He was proud of ... by the famous psychologist.
 - a) praising
 - b) being praised
 - c) having praised
 - d) having been praised
 6. Do you have any difficulty in ... your focus during long lectures?
 - a) maintaining
 - b) being maintained
 - c) having maintained
 - d) having been maintained
 7. She congratulated herself on ... of such an effective learning method.
 - a) thinking
 - b) being thought
 - c) having thought
 - d) having been thought
 8. We improve our cognitive skills by ... memory games and attention exercises.
 - a) practicing
 - b) being practiced
 - c) having practiced
 - d) having been practiced

PART V.
SUBJUNCTIVE
MOOD

Сослагательное
наклонение

PART V.
THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Unit 21. Conditional Sentences

Условные предложения

Условные предложения в английском языке (Conditional sentences) состоят из двух частей: **главное предложение** (main clause / principal clause) и **придаточное предложение** (if-clause / subordinate clause). Придаточное предложение содержит условие (*If it rains tomorrow, ...*), а в главном предложении содержится следствие или результат (*we will stay at home*).

Правила пунктуации в английском языке в условных предложениях отличаются. Если в русском языке придаточное предложение всегда выделяется запятой, то в английском языке есть небольшое отличие. Если придаточная часть (с *if, unless, provided that* и т.д.) стоит в начале предложения, то после неё ставится запятая: ***Unless you hurry***, you'll miss the bus. = Если ты не поторопишься, ты опоздаешь на автобус. Если предложение начинается с главной части, то запятая не нужна: ***You'll miss the bus*** unless you hurry. = Ты опоздаешь на автобус, если не поторопишься.

Условные предложения могут выражать реальное и нереальное (или маловероятное) условие. Придаточные предложения условия обычно вводятся союзами: ***if*** если, ***in case*** в том случае, если, ***unless*** если не, ***provided*** при условии, если (что), ***even if (though)*** даже если, ***but for / if it were not for*** если бы не.

Выделяют несколько **типов условных предложений (conditionals)**. Они различаются по времени и степени реальности ситуации:

Типы условных предложений

Тип	Условие (if-clause)	Результат/ Следствие (main-clause)	Пример (English)	Перевод (Russian)	Случаи употребления
«0» Zero Conditional	If + Present Simple	Present Simple	<i>If you mix red and blue, you get purple.</i>	Если смешать красный и синий, получается фиолетовый.	Законы природы, факты, правила, общепринятые истины
1st Conditional	If + Present Simple / Present Continuous	will / can / may / might + V	<i>If it rains tomorrow, we will stay at home.</i>	Если завтра будет дождь, мы останемся дома.	Вероятное действие в будущем при определенном условии в будущем.
			<i>If she is working late tonight, we can meet tomorrow.</i>	Если она будет работать сегодня вечером, мы встретимся завтра.	
2nd Conditional*	If + Past Simple / Past Continuous	would (could/ might) + V	<i>If I had a car, I would travel a lot.</i>	Если бы у меня была машина, я бы много путешествовал.	Малореальные/ воображаемые ситуации в настоящем или будущем
			<i>If I were you, I would give up smoking.</i>	На твоём месте я бы бросил курить.	
			<i>If it were not raining, we could go out.</i>	Если бы не дождь, мы могли бы выйти на прогулку.	
3rd Conditional **	If + Past Perfect	would have (could/ might have) + V-ed/3	<i>If she had studied harder, she would have passed the exam.</i> <i>If we had left earlier, we could have caught the train.</i> <i>If I had told the truth, he might have believed me.</i>	Если бы она усерднее училась, то содала бы экзамен. Если бы мы вышли раньше, мы могли бы успеть на поезд. Если бы я сказал правду, он, возможно, поверил бы мне.	Действие или ситуация в прошлом, которая могла бы произойти, но этого не случилось. Сожаление о прошедших событиях, упущенных возможностях.

<p><i>Mixed Conditional</i> (<i>прошлое</i> → <i>настоящее</i>) ***</p>	<p>If + Past Perfect</p>	<p>would (could/might) + V</p>	<p><i>If I had learned French, I would work in Paris now.</i></p>	<p><i>Если бы я выучил французский, я бы работал сейчас в Париже.</i></p>	<p>Нереальное условие в прошлом, маловероятный (или нереальный) результат в настоящем</p>
<p><i>Mixed Conditional</i> (<i>настоящее</i> → <i>прошлое</i>)</p>	<p>If + Past Simple</p>	<p>would have (could/might have) + V-ed/3</p>	<p><i>If I were more attentive, I wouldn't have made that mistake yesterday.</i> <i>If I were taller, I would have joined the basketball team last year.</i></p>	<p><i>Если бы я был внимательнее, я бы не сделал вчера ту ошибку.</i> <i>Если бы я был выше ростом, я бы вступил в баскетбольную команду в прошлом году.</i></p>	<p>Нереальное (маловероятное) условие не только в настоящем, но вообще в целом (например, характеристика человека) объясняет результат в прошлом</p>
<p><i>But for / if it were not for / if it hadn't been for + noun / pronoun</i> («если бы не ...», «если бы не было ...»)</p>	<p>Настоящее / Будущее (2 тип условных предложений)</p> <p>But for + существительное / местоимение в объектном падеже* + would/could/might + V</p> <p>If it were not for + существительное / местоимение в объектном падеже + would/could/might + V</p> <p>Прошлое (3 тип условных предложений)</p> <p>But for + существительное / местоимение в объектном падеже + would/could/might + have + V-ed/3</p>		<p><i>But for your help, I would still be lost.</i></p> <p><i>But for him, we could finish earlier.</i></p> <p><i>But for the noise, I might concentrate better.</i></p> <p><i>If it were not for you, I would be alone.</i></p> <p><i>If it were not for this job, I would travel the world</i></p> <p><i>But for the traffic jam, I would have arrived on time.</i></p> <p><i>But for me, they might have been late.</i></p>	<p><i>Если бы не твоя помощь, я бы до сих пор блуждал</i> <i>Если бы не он, мы могли бы закончить раньше.</i> <i>Если бы не шум, я, возможно, лучше сосредоточился бы</i> <i>Если бы не ты, я был бы один.</i> <i>Если бы не эта работа, я бы путешествовал по миру.</i> <i>Если бы не пробка, я бы приехал вовремя.</i> <i>Если бы не я, они могли бы опоздать.</i></p>	<p>Используется, чтобы показать, что что-то единственное препятствовало (или, наоборот, способствовало) развитию событий.</p>

		<p>If it hadn't been for + существительное / местоимение в объектном падеже + would/could/might + have + V-ed/3</p> <p>* Местоимения в объектном падеже (<i>me, him, her, us, them, you</i>).</p>	<p>But for your help, I might have failed the exam.</p> <p>If it hadn't been for your help, I couldn't have finished on time.</p> <p>If it hadn't been for the doctor, he might have died.</p>	<p>Если бы не твоя помощь, я, возможно, завалил бы экзамен.</p> <p>Если бы не твоя помощь, я бы не смог закончить вовремя.</p> <p>Если бы не врач, он мог бы умереть.</p>	
--	--	---	---	---	--

Примечания:

* Когда речь идет о нереальной, воображаемой или гипотетической ситуации, вместо **was** часто используется форма **were** для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа:

If I were at home now, I would help you. (Если бы я был дома сейчас, я бы помог тебе (воображаемое действие в настоящем)).

** В условных предложениях II и III типа союз **If** иногда опускается и на его место ставятся глаголы **had, were, should** (инверсия в условных предложениях, когда подлежащее и сказуемое меняются местами). При переводе таких предложений мы часто используем слово «если» или бессоюзное условное предложение:

- II тип условных предложений (2nd Conditional): Вместо *If I were...* → *Were I...*

Пример:

If I were rich, I would travel the world. = Если бы я был богат, я бы путешествовал по миру.

Were I rich, I would travel the world. = Будь я богат, я бы путешествовал по миру.

- III тип условных предложений (3d Conditional): Вместо *If I (she, he, ...) had...* → *Had I...*

Пример:

If I had known about the meeting, I would have attended. = Если бы я знал о встрече, я бы пришел.

Had I known about the meeting, I would have attended. = Если бы я знал о встрече, я бы пришел.

*** Смешанным называется такой тип условного предложения, при котором одна часть предложения (главное или придаточное) относится к гипотетическому прошлому, а другая — к воображаемому настоящему.

В предложении, где условие относится к гипотетическому настоящему, а результат при таком условии наблюдался в прошлом, условие выражает не разовое действие, а постоянную или характерную черту субъекта или его качество, устойчивое свойство:

If she were a more confident person, she would have applied for that job. = Если бы она была более уверенным в себе человеком (ее характеристика), она бы подала заявку на ту работу (решение в прошлом). «Если бы она была более уверенным в себе человеком...» → устойчивое качество характера, характеристика личности.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Translate sentences from English into Russian.

1. If a person does not express their emotions, they often develop anxiety.
2. If you talk to a therapist, you will feel much more confident.
3. If I were more patient, I would handle stressful situations better.
4. If she had studied behavioral psychology, she would have understood his reactions.
5. If clients don't trust their psychologist, therapy doesn't work effectively.
6. If you focus on negative thoughts, you will reinforce them.
7. If I were not afraid of rejection, I would start a support group for introverts.
8. If he had known about cognitive biases earlier, he wouldn't have made that decision.
9. If people sleep less, their emotional regulation declines.
10. If you practice mindfulness every day, you will reduce your stress level.
11. If she hadn't ignored the early symptoms, she might have recovered faster.
12. If I felt more motivated, I would finish my psychology thesis by now.
13. If the experiment were repeated, the results could differ due to the placebo effect.
14. If he had been more self-aware, he wouldn't have projected his insecurities onto others.
15. If we understand our defense mechanisms, we can control our behavior better.

Ex.2 Open the brackets in the conditional sentences making necessary changes.

a) Model: If he (practice) tomorrow, he will improve. → If he practices tomorrow, he will improve.

1. If you (train) your memory regularly, it will get better.
2. If he (start) the attention exercises now, he will see results soon.
3. Provided that she (understand) the psychology concept, she'll be able to apply it.

4. Unless he (focus) on the task, he'll make mistakes.
5. Providing that we (practice) mindfulness daily, we'll reduce stress.
6. They will remember the information if they (review) it regularly.

b) *Model: If he (practice) regularly, he would improve. → If he practiced regularly, he would improve.*

1. If you understood cognitive psychology, what you (do) differently?
2. If he (live) closer to the psychology center, he would attend classes more often.
3. I might try meditation if it (help) with concentration.
4. I would recommend this memory technique if it (be) effective.
5. If I were as focused as you are, I (complete) all my mental tasks.
6. I would practice more if there (be) more time.
7. She would understand the concept if it (be) explained more clearly.
8. If I (be) in his situation, I would try different learning methods.
9. If we (not have) so many distractions, we would concentrate better.
10. What technique you (try) if you wanted to improve your memory?

c) *Model: If he (practiced) yesterday, he would have improved. → If he had practiced yesterday, he would have improved.*

1. She (remember) the information if she had been more attentive.
2. I might have understood the concept if I (listen) more carefully.
3. If we (know) that the method was effective, we would have tried it earlier.
4. If I had known about the memory technique, I (use) it for the exam.
5. Nobody told me about the focus exercise. I would have tried it if I (know) about it.
6. If you had practiced regularly, you (see) better results.
7. If he (not be) so distracted, he would have completed the task.
8. If Mary had agreed to study together, we (understand) the material better.
9. He (pass) the psychology test if he had studied the concepts.
10. I would have improved my concentration if I (start) the exercises earlier.

Ex.3 Choose the correct option.

- 1) If it ____ tomorrow, we will go to the park.
 A) won't rain B) isn't raining C) doesn't rain

- 2) She ____ to the party if she has time.
A) will come B) comes C) came
- 3) If you ____ early, you will catch the bus.
A) wake up B) will wake up C) woke up
- 4) He ____ a sandwich if he is hungry.
A) eats B) ate C) will eat
- 5) If they ____ the tickets, they will go to the concert.
A) buy B) will buy C) bought

Ex.4 Choose the correct option.

- 1) If I ____ more money, I would buy a new phone.
A) have B) had C) will have
- 2) She ____ to Paris if she won the lottery.
A) goes B) would go C) went
- 3) If he ____ harder, he would pass the exam.
A) studies B) studied C) will study
- 4) They ____ happy if they lived in a warm country.
A) are B) were C) would be
- 5) If you ____ early, you wouldn't miss the bus.
A) wake up B) woke up C) will wake up

Ex.5 Choose the correct option.

- 1) If we ____ the weather forecast, we would have taken umbrellas.
A) checked B) had checked C) would check
- 2) He ____ the job if he had sent his resume on time.
A) got B) would get C) would have gotten
- 3) If they ____ a map, they wouldn't have gotten lost in the forest.
A) brought B) had brought C) will bring
- 4) She ____ the cake if she had known about the party.
A) baked B) would bake C) would have baked
- 5) If you ____ my warning, you wouldn't have fallen into the trap.
A) heard B) had heard C) will hear

Ex.6 Choose the correct option.

1. If I ____ enough attention, I will remember this information.
A) won't pay B) isn't paying C) don't pay

2. She ____ her memory if she practices regularly.
A) will improve B) improves C) improved
3. If you ____ this mental exercise, your focus will get better.
A) do B) will do C) did
4. He ____ the details if he observes carefully.
A) notices B) noticed C) will notice
5. If they ____ the memory technique, they will recall information faster.
A) use B) will use C) used
6. If I ____ better concentration, I would read faster.
A) have B) had C) will have
7. She ____ her memory problems if she understood psychology better.
A) solves B) would solve C) solved
8. If he ____ more attention, he would notice the patterns.
A) pays B) paid C) will pay
9. They ____ better test results if they practiced mindfulness.
A) are B) were C) would have
10. If you ____ memory techniques, you would remember names easily.
A) use B) used C) will use
11. If we ____ about this perception method earlier, we would have used it.
A) knew B) had known C) would know
12. He ____ the memory test if he had practiced more.
A) passed B) would pass C) would have passed
13. If they ____ the attention exercise, they wouldn't have lost focus.
A) did B) had done C) will do
14. She ____ better if she had understood the psychology concept.
A) felt B) would feel C) would have felt
15. If you ____ my advice about memory, you wouldn't have forgotten the information.
A) took B) had taken C) will take

Ex.7 Use Conditionals of three types

Example: If I (to practice) mindfulness, I (to feel) calmer. → If I practice mindfulness, I will feel calmer.

If I practiced mindfulness, I would feel calmer. If I had practiced mindfulness, I would have felt calmer.

1. If my friend (to try) this memory technique, he (to remember) better.
2. If the psychologist (to explain) the concept clearly, we (to understand) it easily.
3. If we (to receive) proper training, we (not to have) such attention problems.

4. If you (not to train) your brain regularly, you (to have) memory difficulties.
5. If you (to be) distracted, I (to help) you focus.
6. If I (to live) near the psychology center, I (to attend) workshops every week.
7. If she (to know) about perception techniques, she (to try) to improve her observation skills.

Ex.8 Use the correct structure of Conditional sentences of Three Types.

1. If he were not so easily distracted, he (not to make) so many mistakes.
2. If you (to explain) the memory technique to me, I will practice it.
3. If she (not to be) so forgetful, she would be a much better student.
4. If my friend does not try meditation, we (to practice) simple breathing exercises instead.
5. If they (not to attend) the psychology lecture last year, they would not have learned about memory techniques.
6. If you (not to get) the psychology book, we will use online resources.
7. If you were not so careless about mental health, you (to consult) a psychologist.
8. I would be delighted if I (to have) such a good memory.
9. If the mental exercise (to be) too difficult, we will try an easier one.
10. If it is not important, I (not to focus) on this detail.
11. If he (not to read) so much psychology, he would not understand human behavior so well.
12. If my teacher (to be) available, he will explain the cognitive concept to us.
13. My brother would not have failed the memory test if he (not to skip) the practice sessions.
14. If my colleague (to work) on the same research, we would share findings every day.
15. If you practiced observation skills daily, you (to notice) more details.
16. If he did not study perception, he (not to understand) visual illusions so well.
17. If he (to come) to the psychology workshop yesterday, he would have learned new techniques.

Ex.9 Use the correct structure of Conditional sentences. Don't forget that there exist mixed types of conditional sentences.

1. If I (see) ____ her at the last party, I (tell) ____ her the news.
2. If I (be) ____ more organized, I (not miss) ____ the deadline last week.

3. If he (not spend) _____ all his money this morning, he (have) _____ enough for the concert now.
4. They (not be) _____ late yesterday if they (leave) _____ on time.
5. If they (be) _____ more careful, they (not get) _____ into trouble yesterday.
6. If she (listen) _____ to my advice then, she (not be) _____ in this situation now.
7. We asked him to help us. If he (know) _____ the answer, he (help) _____ us.
8. If we (not leave) _____ so late, we (not be) _____ stuck in traffic now.
9. If I (know) _____ about the meeting earlier, I (attend) _____ it today.
10. If she (not eat) _____ so much when she lived in Spain, she (become) _____ fitter long ago!
11. If you (study) _____ harder, you (be) _____ more successful now.
12. If they (not argue) _____ when they first met, they (be) _____ friends now.
13. She (not fail) _____ the last test if she (prepare) _____ properly.
14. If I (meet) _____ him earlier, we (become) _____ friends a year ago.
15. If you (not break) _____ your leg, you (join) _____ us for the hike last year.
16. They (not have) _____ to cancel the trip to mountains if the weather (be) _____ better. That was a great pity!
17. If he (take) _____ the job offer in Berlin, he (be) _____ happier now.
18. If I (bring) _____ my camera, I (take) _____ some great photos. But I forgot.
19. If she (not forget) _____ her keys, she (not be) _____ locked out. Her neighbors helped her.
20. If we (not go) _____ to that restaurant, we (not have) _____ such a bad experience.

Ex.10 Translate the words in brackets into English.

1. If it weren't for his pride, he (попросил бы прощения).
2. If it hadn't been for the heavy rain, we (поехали бы) on a picnic.
3. But for your advice, I (не принял бы) that job offer.
4. If it weren't for my parents, I (не смог бы) afford therapy.
5. If it hadn't been for that accident, he (стал бы) a famous athlete.
6. But for her anxiety, she (согласилась бы) to speak at the conference.
7. If it weren't for caffeine, I (не смог бы функционировать) in the morning.
8. If it hadn't been for his professor, he (не написал бы) his research paper.
9. But for your support, we (не справились бы) with this project.
10. If it weren't for the internet, many people (не имели бы доступа) to mental health information.

11. If it hadn't been for her motivation, the team (сдался бы) long ago.
12. But for their teamwork, they (не выиграли бы) the competition.
13. If it were not for music, I (чувствовал бы себя) much more stressed.
14. If it hadn't been for his fear of failure, he (начал бы) his own business.

Ex.11 Compose sentences according to the model.

Use **but for / if it were not for / if it hadn't been for + noun / pronoun**

Model:

*I don't want to tell you this, but I promised to. → **But for my promise, I wouldn't tell you this.** → **If it were not for my promise, I wouldn't tell you this.**
*He didn't die. The operation saved him. → **But for the operation, he would have died.** → **If it hadn't been for the operation, he would have died.****

1. She can't go abroad because she doesn't have enough money.
2. We got lost because there was no GPS signal.
3. I passed the exam thanks to your help.
4. He managed to stay calm because of his meditation practice.
5. They didn't fail the project because their teacher supported them.
6. I'm not stressed now because I took a long vacation.
7. She's still in touch with her ex only because of their child.
8. We wouldn't be late if there wasn't traffic.
9. He got the job because his friend recommended him.
10. I didn't panic because you were there for me.

Ex.12 Complete the sentences using your imagination.

1. But for my therapist, I would never _____.
2. If it weren't for my sense of humor, _____.
3. If it hadn't been for that book on emotional intelligence, _____.
4. But for his pride, he would _____.
5. If it weren't for the support of my friends, _____.
6. If it hadn't been for lockdown, I might _____.
7. But for her confidence, she wouldn't _____.
8. If it weren't for coffee, I _____ every morning.

Ex.13 Correct the mistakes in the sentences. The wrong part of the sentence is in italics.

1. *If people express their emotions,* they would feel less anxious.
2. *If I will talk to my therapist,* I feel much better.

3. If he knew how to manage stress, *he will not react so aggressively*.
4. *If she didn't ignore her burnout last year*, she wouldn't feel so exhausted now.
5. *If a client didn't trust their psychologist*, therapy doesn't work effectively.
6. *If you focus on your strengths yesterday*, you would feel more confident today.
7. If I were more assertive, *I will set boundaries easily*.
8. If he hadn't read about cognitive distortions, *he doesn't understand his behavior now*.
9. *If people slept less*, their emotional regulation declines.
10. If you practiced mindfulness regularly, *you will reduce your stress levels*.
11. If it were not for her optimism, *she can't overcome depression*.
12. If I hadn't been afraid of failure, *I start my own practice years ago*.

Ex.14 Translate, then complete each sentence, using the words in brackets.

1. Если бы его внимание было лучше, тогда ... (to complete the task).
2. Если бы у меня была плохая память ... (to use memory techniques).
3. Вчерашнее занятие отменили бы, если бы ... (to be bad weather).
4. Вы бы ничего не забыли, если бы ... (to pay attention properly).
5. Я не возражал бы против этих упражнений, если бы ... (to be effective).
6. К кому бы вы обратились за помощью, если бы ... (memory problems)?
7. Я уверен, что, если бы он попробовал эту технику концентрации ... (not to give up).
8. Если бы вы тренировали внимание каждый день ... (to see improvement).

Ex.15 Translate sentences from Russian into English

if Present Simple + Present Simple

if Present Simple + глагол в повелительном наклонении

1. Если я не высыпаюсь, моя концентрация страдает.
2. Если регулярно тренировать внимание, оно улучшается.
3. Если игнорировать эмоции, они становятся сильнее.
4. Если хочешь улучшить память, делай специальные упражнения каждый день.
5. Если я пью слишком много кофе, я не могу нормально сосредоточиться.

if Present Simple + Future Simple

if Present Simple + might, may

1. Если будешь регулярно тренироваться, твоя память улучшится.
2. Студент будет разочарован, если провалит тест по психологии.
3. Если не сосредоточишься сейчас, пропустишь важную информацию.
4. Если завтра семинар будет интересным, я посету его.
5. Если у меня будет достаточно времени, я изучу когнитивную психологию.
6. Если я увижу профессора психологии, я спрошу его о методах улучшения памяти.
7. Если я пойму эту концепцию, я объясню ее другим.
8. Я буду счастлив, если моя память улучшится.
9. Когда я закончу этот курс психологии, я применю знания.
10. Студент провалит экзамен, если не изучит материал.

If + Past Simple, + would V

If + Past Simple, + could V

1. Если бы ты изучал психологию, мы бы обсуждали проблемы каждый день.
2. Если бы я жил рядом с институтом, я бы посещал все лекции.
3. Если бы мы могли лучше концентрироваться, мы бы выполняли задания быстрее.
4. Я бы удивился, если бы он запомнил все детали.
5. Если бы я знал ответ, я бы сказал тебе.
6. Если бы он был более наблюдательным, он бы замечал важные детали.
7. Если бы я был на твоём месте, я бы не игнорировал эмоциональные сигналы.
8. Если бы он тренировался регулярно, он бы видел прогресс.
9. Если бы Саре не нравилась психология, она бы не изучала ее.
10. Если бы я был на твоём месте, я бы поступил на факультет экспериментальной психологии.

If Past Perfect + would have V3/ed

1. Если бы она обратила внимание, она бы поняла концепцию.
2. Он бы провалил тест, если бы не изучал психологию.
3. Если бы мы встали раньше, мы бы не пропустили лекцию по психологии.

4. Если бы ты объяснил ясно, я бы понял.
5. Если бы я не отвлекался, я бы не сделал эту ошибку.
6. Если бы я не устал, мы бы обсудили тему по психологии.
7. Я бы показал тебе свои заметки по психологии, если бы принес их.
8. Мы бы узнали больше, если бы учитель объяснил лучше.
9. Что бы ты сделал, если бы не понял концепцию?
10. Если бы я знал о семинаре, я бы посетил его.

REVISION
(Conditional Sentences)

Ex.1 Read the situations. Use the prompts to form conditional sentences.

Example:

Situation: They are highly skeptical of Freudian theory (this is their stable opinion). Therefore, they dismissed the new research that was based on it.

Prompt: (If / they / not / be / so skeptical of Freudian theory / they / not / dismiss / the new research)

Answer: If they were not highly skeptical of Freudian theory, they hadn't dismissed the new research.

1. Mark never learned healthy coping mechanisms in his youth. Now, he struggles with severe anxiety.
(he / learn / healthy coping mechanisms / he / not / develop / such severe anxiety)
2. Sarah is inherently optimistic (this is her permanent trait). Because of this, she wasn't discouraged when her first research paper was rejected.
(If / Sarah / not / be / inherently optimistic / she / be / discouraged / when her paper was rejected)
3. He has severe imposter syndrome (синдром самозванца). That's why he doesn't believe he deserves a promotion.
(he / not have / imposter syndrome / he / believe / he deserves a promotion)
4. A team of researchers didn't receive a grant for their project on phobias. Consequently, they had to abandon their study.
(If / the team / receive / the grant / they / not / abandon / their study on phobias)

5. My therapist is a great empath (this is her professional quality). That's why she understood my emotional state so perfectly during our first session.
(If / my therapist / not / be / such a great empath / she / not / understand / my emotional state so perfectly)
6. She has a strong fear of failure. As a result, she avoids new challenges.
(she / not have / a fear of failure / she / take / more challenges)
7. Clara experienced a traumatic event in her childhood. She didn't get professional help, and now she has unresolved issues with trust.
(If / Clara / get / professional help / she / overcome / her trust issues)
8. He is always in denial about his cognitive biases (this is his constant state). That's why he made that irrational decision last year.
(If / he / not / be / in denial about his cognitive biases / he / not / make / that irrational decision)
9. David didn't practice mindfulness and self-reflection, so he didn't develop strong emotional resilience.
(If / David / practice / mindfulness / he / develop / stronger emotional resilience)
10. Leo is prone to procrastination (this is his bad habit). That's why he missed the deadline for the psychology conference application.
(If / Leo / not / be / prone to procrastination / he / not / miss / the deadline)

Ex.2 Read the situations. Use the prompts to form conditional sentences.

1. The therapist didn't establish a good rapport with the client during the first session. As a result, the client discontinued the therapy.
(If / the therapist / establish / a good rapport / the client / not / discontinue / the therapy)
2. She is extremely perceptive when it comes to body language (this is her skill). That's how she noticed her client's discomfort immediately.
(If / she / not / be / so perceptive / she / not / notice / her client's discomfort)
3. I am not very open-minded. That's why I'm resistant to new therapeutic approaches.
(I / be / more open-minded / I / not be / resistant to new approaches)

4. Maria didn't recognize the signs of cognitive dissonance in her own thinking, so she never tried to align her beliefs with her actions.
(If / Maria / recognize / the signs of cognitive dissonance / she / try / to align her beliefs with her actions)
5. He is notoriously bad at active listening (this is his flaw). That's why he missed the crucial detail in what his patient told him yesterday.
(If / he / be / good at active listening / he / not / miss / the crucial detail)
6. They lack intrinsic motivation for their studies. Therefore, they don't enjoy learning.
(they / have / more intrinsic motivation / they / enjoy / learning)
7. The scientists didn't use a double-blind method in their early experiments, which led to biased results.
(If / the scientists / use / a double-blind method / they / not / get / biased results)
8. I am naturally very curious about the human mind (this is my trait). That's what motivated me to sign up for that neuroscience workshop last month.
(If / I / not / be / so curious about the human mind / I / not / sign up / for that workshop)
9. He is very impulsive. That's why he makes such quick, often poor, decisions.
(he / not be / so impulsive / he / not make / such quick decisions)
10. He didn't have a supportive social network after the loss, so he developed a major depressive disorder.
(If / he / have / a supportive social network / he / not / develop / a major depressive disorder)

Ex.3 Read the situations about present or past psychological traits and events. Use the prompts to form conditional sentences, replacing the "if" clause with 'but for' or 'if it were not for' (for present/future) / 'if it hadn't been for' (for past).

Example:

Situation: His therapist's advice was crucial. He didn't give up on his recovery.

Prompt: (his therapist's advice / he / give up on his recovery)

Answer: But for his therapist's advice, he would have given up on his recovery.

(or If it hadn't been for his therapist's advice...)

- 1) Her incredible resilience is the main thing. She isn't overwhelmed by stress.
(her incredible resilience / she / be overwhelmed by stress)
- 2) Winning that research grant was essential. Our cognitive study wouldn't have started.
(winning that research grant / our cognitive study / not have started)
- 3) His strong support system is key. He doesn't feel isolated during this difficult time.
(his strong support system / he / feel isolated)
- 4) That initial breakthrough in the experiment was vital. We wouldn't have discovered the new behavioral pattern.
(that initial breakthrough / we / not discover / the new behavioral pattern)
- 5) My colleague's sharp observation is the only reason. We aren't misinterpreting the client's data right now.
(my colleague's sharp observation / we / misinterpret / the client's data)
- 6) The patient's sudden recollection of a childhood memory was crucial. The psychiatrist wouldn't have identified the root of the trauma.
(the patient's sudden recollection / the psychiatrist / not identify / the root of the trauma)
- 7) This specific medication is helping him. He wouldn't be able to manage his anxiety so effectively.
(this specific medication / he / not be able to manage his anxiety)
- 8) The witness's detailed testimony was important. The psychologist's report wouldn't have been so accurate.
(the witness's detailed testimony / the psychologist's report / not be / so accurate)

TEST

1. If he ___ not so easily distracted, he ___ your instructions.
a) was / won't forget b) were / wouldn't have forgotten
c) had been / won't forget d) were / won't forget

2. If he ___ quite near the psychology center, it ___ him only 7 minutes to get there.
 a) doesn't live / wouldn't have taken b) didn't live / won't take
 c) didn't live / wouldn't take d) hadn't live / wouldn't take
3. If I ___ more time next month, I ___ to the memory workshop to practice my skills.
 a) have / will go b) had / would go c) had had / would have gone
4. If you ___ more attentive, you ___ so many mistakes in every cognitive test.
 a) are / wouldn't make b) were / didn't make c) were / wouldn't make
5. What ___ you notice, if you ___ more observant?
 a) will / become b) would / became c) would / become
6. If they ___ at the meeting yesterday, they ___ us some valuable advice.
 a) were / could give b) had been / could have given c) were / could give
7. You ___ improve your memory, if you ___ so much.
 a) may / didn't multitask b) might / don't multitask c) might / didn't multitask
8. Who ___ this cognitive research, if she suddenly ___ ill?
 a) did / would fall b) will do / fell c) would do / fell
9. If the students ___ proper memory training, what ___?
 a) don't get / would happen b) didn't get / would happen c) didn't get / will happen
10. We ___ glad, if only they ___ our psychology project.
 a) should be / accept b) should be / accepted c) shall be / accepted
11. If I ___ him wrong information when he asked, he ___ trust me again.
 a) tell / won't trust b) told / won't trust c) had told / wouldn't have trusted
12. The student ___ this psychology book, if it ___ a bit cheaper.
 a) will buy / had cost b) will buy / costs c) would buy / had cost
13. ___ the students focused, they ___ during the psychology lecture.
 a) Are / wouldn't daydream b) Were / won't daydream c) Were / wouldn't daydream
14. If you ___ the information more thoroughly, you ___ the test much better.
 a) had repeated / would have done b) repeat / would do c) have repeated / did
15. ___ you help me with this memory exercise, if I ___ you?
 a) Would / ask b) Would / asked c) Did / asked

Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Если люди ежедневно анализируют свои мысли, они становятся более осознанными. 2. Если я завтра поговорю со своим психологом, я лучше спланирую свои цели. 3. Если бы я умел контролировать свои страхи, я бы участвовал в публичных выступлениях. 4. Если бы она практиковала эмоциональную саморегуляцию (*emotional self-regulation*) раньше, она бы избежала конфликта. 5. Если бы пациенты доверяли своему терапевту, они бы быстрее достигали прогресса. 6. Если ты сосредоточишься на позитивных аспектах, твоя самооценка повысится. 7. Если бы я не боялся критики, я бы начал свой блог о психологии. 8. Если бы он понимал свои проблемы, он бы принял лучшее решение. 9. Если люди проводят меньше времени в социальных сетях, их тревожность снижается. 10. Если ты будешь регулярно записывать свои эмоции, ты лучше поймешь свои реакции. 11. Если бы она не избегала трудных разговоров, отношения с коллегами улучшились бы. 12. Если бы я был более целеустремленным, я бы уже завершил свой психологический проект. 13. Хотелось бы мне, чтобы у меня было больше навыков управления стрессом (*stress management*). 14. Если бы не ее терпение, она бы не справилась с этой задачей. 15. Если бы не поддержка наставника, я бы не смог пройти этот тренинг.

Unit 22. Making a Wish

Конструкция с «*wish*» (*I wish / I wished*) используется в условных предложениях для выражения пожеланий, сожалений или разочарований, относящихся к настоящему, прошлому или будущему.

Есть три основных случая, в зависимости от времени, к которому относится наше сожаление, пожелание или предположение:

<i>Случаи употребления</i>	<i>Грамматическая форма</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
Выражение пожелания (сожаления) о том, чтобы положение вещей, существующее в момент высказывания (<i>в настоящем</i>), было изменено.	wish(ed)* + Past Simple (V-ed/2)	<i>I wish I had a car. She wishes she were taller. I wished I knew his name.</i>	<i>Жаль, что у меня нет машины. Она бы хотела быть выше. Мне было жаль, что я не знал его имени.</i>
	wish(ed)* + Past Continuous (were + V-ing)	<i>I wish my neighbors weren't constantly making noise.</i>	<i>Мне бы хотелось, чтобы мои соседи не шумели постоянно.</i>
Выражение сожаления по поводу ситуации или упущенной возможности <i>в прошлом</i> (при Past Perfect в утвердительной форме), или по поводу совершенного в прошлом поступка (при Past Perfect в отрицательной форме).	wish(ed) + Past Perfect (had + V-ed/3)	<i>I wish I had studied harder. I wished I had studied harder.</i>	<i>Жаль, что я не учился усерднее. Мне было жаль, что я не учился усерднее.</i>
	wish(ed) + Past Perfect (hadn't + V-ed/3)	<i>He wishes he hadn't said that. I wish I hadn't gone there last night.</i>	<i>Ему жаль, что он это сказал. Лучше бы я не ходил туда вчера вечером.</i>
	wish(ed) + would + V	<i>I wish you would stop shouting. I wished he would stop shouting. She wished it would stop raining.</i>	<i>Хотелось бы, чтобы ты перестал кричать. В тот момент мне хотелось, чтобы он перестал кричать. Она мечтала, чтобы дождь, наконец, прекратился.</i>

Примечания:

* **wish(-es)** в Present Simple выражает чувство сожаления или желания в настоящее время, в то время как **wished** в Past Simple указывает на желание/сожаление, которое было в прошлом:

I wish I knew his phone number. = Жаль, что я не знаю его номер телефона.

I wished I knew his phone number. = Мне было жаль, что я не знал его номер телефона.

Независимо от времени глагола в главной части, время в придаточном предложении не меняется, согласования времен не происходит, если действия главного и придаточного предложений происходят одновременно.

Перевод предложений с конструкцией **wish** на русский язык не всегда дословный. Например, предложение *I wish I knew the answer!* можно перевести следующим образом:

Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы я знала ответ!

Хорошо было бы, если бы я знала ответ!

Как жаль, что я не знаю ответа!

Если при переводе на русский язык мы используем слово «Жаль...», то смысл придаточного предложения будет отрицательным, при условии, что в английском варианте оно утвердительное, и наоборот.

Сравните:

I wish I had said that. → «Жаль, что я это не сказал» (в русском варианте перевода содержится отрицание).

I wish I hadn't said that. → «Жаль, что я это сказал» (в русском варианте перевода отрицание не содержится).

Конструкции с **If only**

Конструкция **If only** («если бы только...», «ах, как жаль, что...») очень близка к *I wish*, только звучит эмоциональнее — с оттенком сильного сожаления или желания.

Сравните:

- *I wish I knew the answer.* = Жаль, что я не знаю ответа.
- *If only I knew the answer!* = Ах, если бы только я знал ответ! (то же самое, но с более сильным эмоциональным оттенком):

Случай употребления	Грамматическая форма	Пример	Перевод
сожаление о фактах/ состояниях в настоящем	If only + Past Simple (V-ed/2)	<i>If only I knew the answer!</i> <i>If only she were here now.</i> <i>If only it didn't rain so often.</i>	<i>Ах, если бы только я знал ответ!</i> <i>Если бы только она была здесь сейчас.</i> <i>Жаль, что так часто идёт дождь.</i>

сожаление о том, что произошло/ не произошло в прошлом	If only + Past Perfect (had (not) + V-ed/3)	<i>If only I had studied harder!</i> <i>If only he had listened to me.</i> <i>If only we hadn't missed the train.</i>	Если бы только я учился усерднее! Если бы только он меня тогда послушал. Ах, как жаль, что мы опоздали на поезд.
сильное желание, чтобы кто-то (или обстоятельство) изменились в будущем или перестали раздражать	If only + would + V	<i>If only it would stop raining!</i> <i>If only she would call me back.</i> <i>If only people would be more careful.</i>	Если бы только дождь прекратился! Ах, если бы только она перезвонила. Если бы только люди были осторожнее.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Express regret about a situation in the present.

Example: wish + Past Simple

- *I wish I had a better memory. Жаль, что у меня нет хорошей памяти (сейчас).*
- *I wish I knew meditation techniques. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы я знал техники медитации (но я не знаю). Жаль, что я не знаю техник медитации.*

1. We (wish) we (understand) this psychology concept now.
2. He (wish) he (have) better concentration.
3. They (wish) they (remember) important information.
4. They (wish) they (can) focus better during lectures.
5. I (wish) I (understand) cognitive psychology.
6. I (wish) I (feel) more relaxed now.
7. I (wish) I (have) more mental energy.
8. I (wish) we (not need) to study for this difficult test.
9. I (wish) our teacher (explain) complex concepts more clearly.
10. My friend (wish) they (pay) more attention in psychology class.

Ex.2 Express regret about a situation in the past.

Example: wish + Past Perfect

- *I wish I had practiced memory techniques. Мне жаль, что я не тренировал техники памяти. Я бы хотела, чтобы я тренировала техники памяти.*
 - *I wish he hadn't skipped the psychology lecture. Жаль, что он пропустил лекцию по психологии. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы он не пропускал лекцию.*
1. I (wish) I (practice) mindfulness regularly. — Жаль, что я не практиковал осознанность регулярно.
 2. I (wish) I (bring) my psychology notes. — Жаль, что я не взял свои заметки по психологии.
 3. I (wish) I (listen) to the teacher's explanation. — Жаль, что я не слушал объяснение учителя.
 4. I (wish) I (attend) the memory workshop. — Жаль, что я не посетил семинар по памяти.
 5. I (wish) I (not ignore) the psychologist's advice. — Жаль, что я проигнорировал совет психолога.
 6. I (wish) I (not forget) to do the attention exercises. — Мне жаль, что я забыл делать упражнения на внимание.
 7. I (wish) you (help) me with the psychology homework yesterday. — Жаль, что ты не помог мне с домашним заданием по психологии вчера.

Ex.3 Express a desire to change something in the future (complaint about a situation).

Example: would + verb, could + verb...

- *You always come in without knocking. Don't enter the psychology lab without permission. I wish you wouldn't enter the psychology lab without permission. Я бы хотел, чтобы вы не входили в лабораторию без разрешения.*
 - *I have a test tomorrow. I wish I could concentrate better on this test tomorrow. Я бы хотел лучше сосредоточиться завтра на контрольной.*
1. The child is using only dark colors in his drawing. You want him to try brighter ones next time. You say: **I wish** the child ...

2. You're waiting for the results of the child's perception test. They're late and you're getting impatient. You say to yourself: I wish...
3. You're looking for a simple way to explain complex emotions to children — so far without success. You say: I wish
4. You can hear a child having a loud hysteria. It's been going on for a long time and you're trying to concentrate. You say: I wish a child ...
5. The boy has been struggling to recognize the emotion "surprise" for weeks. You think he needs a different approach in future. You say to your colleague: I wish he ...
6. My friend is studying to be a psychologist far away from me. I miss him. I'd like to visit him next holidays. You say: I wish I...
7. The students missed a lot of classes and didn't pass the test. They want to retake it tomorrow. They say: We wish we ...

For the following situations, write sentences with I wish... wouldn't...

8. The assistant always uses complex psychological terms with the children. This annoys you. You say to the assistant: I wish you ...
9. A lot of people in the nursery speak too loudly. You don't like this because it overstimulates the children. You say: I wish people...

Ex.4 Make sentences using 'wish' + past simple about the things.

1. I don't have a good memory.

2. I can't concentrate well.

3. I'm easily distracted.

4. My perception is slow.

5. I have poor observation skills.

6. I don't understand my learning style.

7. I can't remember people's faces.

8. I don't have time for brain training.

9. I can't ignore background noise.

10. I can't draw facial expressions for happiness and anger.

Ex.5 Change, using I wish.

Example: *I'm sorry I haven't got a good memory.* → ***I wish I had a good memory.***

I'm sorry you didn't share the psychology resources. → ***I wish you had shared the psychology resources.***

I'd like you to keep silence. → ***I wish you would keep silence.***

1. I'm sorry I don't understand cognitive psychology.
2. I'm sorry I didn't practice the memory exercise.
3. I'm sorry I don't know meditation techniques.
4. I'm sorry I haven't got better observation skills.
5. I'm sorry I can't concentrate for long periods.
6. I'd like you to stop distracting me. (You're making so much noise that I can't focus.)
7. I'm sorry that psychology books cost so much.
8. It's a pity that the memory course is only on weekends.
9. It's a pity he didn't practice focus exercises during the course.
10. It's a pity I haven't got access to the cognitive lab.
11. I would like my memory to improve (but I'm not very hopeful).
12. I'd like you to explain the concept again (even though you are ready to move on).
13. I'm sorry I didn't learn about perception earlier.
14. I'm sorry I ignored the psychologist's advice.
15. I'm sorry I didn't continue with the attention training.
16. I'm sorry I didn't know about the memory techniques earlier.
17. I'm sorry I didn't ask the teacher to explain cognitive concepts.

Ex.6 Read each situation and write a sentence expressing regret or a strong wish using If only.

Example:

*You didn't learn the vocabulary, and now you can't understand the text. → You: **If only I had learnt the vocabulary!***

1. You didn't take an umbrella, and it started to rain heavily.
If only...
2. You missed the bus and now you have to walk.
If only...
3. You said something rude to your friend, and now you feel bad about it.
If only...
4. You don't have a car, and you have to take the subway every day.
If only...
5. You can't cook, so you always have to order food.
If only...
6. You worked too much last week, and now you feel exhausted.
If only...
7. Your friend moved to another country, and you really miss them.
If only...

Ex.7 Complete the sentences

1. I can't remember the psychologist's name. I wish I ___ the psychologist's name.
2. I don't know how to improve my memory. If only I ___ how to improve my memory.
3. I can't focus for long periods. I wish I ___ for long periods.
4. I can't understand this cognitive theory. If only I ___ this cognitive theory.
5. I don't have enough patience for meditation. I wish I ___ enough patience for meditation.
6. My mental energy is low today. If only ___ higher.
7. My observation skills are weak. I wish they ___ stronger.
8. The psychology books are difficult. If only they ___ easier.
9. These focus exercises are boring. I wish they ___ more interesting.
10. This memory technique is complicated. If only it ___ simpler.

Ex.8 Open the brackets using the required form of the subjunctive mood after “wish”

1. I wish I (to consult) the psychologist when I first noticed my attention problems.
2. I wish I (not to ignore) the memory techniques: they really work.
3. I wish you (to practice) the focus exercises when you have time.
4. I wish you (to join) the psychology laboratory yesterday: I learned so much!
5. I wish I (to understand) cognitive psychology better.
6. I wish I (not to skip) the meditation session: I felt so stressed all day.
7. I wish you (to study) psychology more in the future.
8. I wish I (to attend) the perception lecture: it was so interesting.
9. I wish we (to work) on memory techniques together next month.
10. The student wished he (not to forget) to practice the memory exercise.

Ex.9 Open the brackets using the required form of the subjunctive mood after “wish”.

(Past Simple, Past Perfect, would + V, could + V, could have + V3).

1. I wish I _____ (know) the answer to this question or I'll fail my exam.
2. She wishes she _____ (not/forget) to buy milk on her way home.
3. I wish it _____ (stop) raining. I want to go for a walk.
4. He wishes he _____ (can/come) to your party last weekend.
5. They wish they _____ (live) in a warmer country.
6. I wish you _____ (not/play) your music so loudly. I'm trying to concentrate.
7. We wish we _____ (not/miss) the train yesterday.
8. They wish their children _____ (help) more with the housework.
9. She wishes she _____ (can/speak) more languages.
10. I wish I _____ (not/spend) all my money on that gadget. It is useless!
11. He wishes he _____ (be) lying on a beach in Spain right now.
12. I wish you _____ (tell) me the truth from the beginning right now.

Ex.10 Determine the purpose of each sentence.

a) A wish to change a present situation	b) Regret about a missed opportunity or an action in the past.	c) A wish for something to change or happen in the future.
---	--	--

1. I wish I had more free time to read books.
2. She wishes she could have attended the conference last week.
3. He wishes he could speak Japanese fluently.
4. She wishes she hadn't eaten so much chocolate yesterday.
5. I wish I were lying on a beach right now instead of working.
6. I wish you would stop tapping your pen on the desk.
7. They wish they could visited the Louvre when they were in Paris.
8. I wish the neighbors would be quieter in the evenings.
9. He wishes he hadn't sold his old vinyl records.
10. I wish I could play a musical instrument.
11. I wished I had studied medicine instead of art.
12. We wish we were traveling around the world.

Ex.11 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

1. The mental task was terrible. I wish it had easier.
2. John wishes he could has understood the psychology concept better.
3. Anna wishes she wasn't studying for the cognitive test on Saturday.
4. Mike wishes he felt more confident for the memory challenge tomorrow.
5. We wish our psychology course wasn't over.
6. If only I invested more time in brain training last year.
7. I wish he stop complaining.
8. I wish the child stop crying.
9. If only he came yesterday.
10. I wish I go to the conference.

Ex.12 Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Как жаль, что вы не тренируете память.
2. Жаль, что я не последовал совету психолога.
3. Жаль, что у меня сейчас нет времени для медитации.

4. Мы пожалели, что не посетили лекцию по психологии внимания.
5. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы пришли на наш семинар по памяти.
6. Нам бы хотелось, чтобы вы никогда не забывали важную информацию.
7. Как бы нам хотелось, чтобы вы работали с нами над исследованием восприятия.
8. Она пожалела, что не сосредоточилась на задаче.
9. Жаль, что лекция по психологии уже закончилась.
10. Жаль, что вы не попробовали технику запоминания.
11. Жаль, что я не понимаю когнитивную психологию.
12. Жаль, что я не пошел вчера на семинар по вниманию.
13. Жаль, что я потратил так много времени на бесполезные методы.
14. Жаль, что я не знаю техник медитации.
15. Жаль, что это упражнение такое сложное.

REVISION
(Making a Wish)

Ex.1 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. If only I ___ (have) a better memory for details.
2. Peter wishes he ___ (not ignore) the attention exercises. Now he has trouble focusing.
3. Mary's teacher wishes she ___ (do) well on the memory test next week.
4. Anna feels frustrated. She wishes she ___ (understand) this psychology concept now.
5. If only you ___ (explain) this mental exercise to me. I'm confused.
6. Tom wishes his friend ___ (not forget) their appointment. He waited for an hour.
7. It was an important lecture. I wish I ___ (take) notes during the class.
8. You have trouble focusing. I wish you ___ (try) meditation this month.
9. My sister wishes she ___ (not lose) her concentration during the exam. The questions were easy.
10. David wishes he ___ (not skip) the perception training. Now he misses important details.
11. My brother wishes I ___ (help) him with his attention problems this weekend.
12. Lisa wishes she ___ (not avoid) the focus exercises. Now she gets tired quickly.

Ex.2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

1. The teacher wishes she (have) more resources for teaching emotions.
2. The session was dull. I wish it (be) more engaging for the children.
3. I wish I (be) better at drawing so that I could make clearer picture cards.
4. I wish you (stop) using complex terms while I am explaining this to the children.
5. It was a confusing experiment. I wish we (not participate) in it.
6. I wish the new toys (arrive) so we could use them in our play therapy.
7. I wish the child's parent (be) here. They'd be able to calm him down.
8. Yesterday the child got very frustrated. I wish I (have) a better way to help.
9. I wish we (attend) the workshop next week but we're too busy.
10. I wish you (keep) the scary picture hidden yesterday. Now the child is afraid.
11. This emotion is hard to explain. I wish it (not be) so complex.
12. I wish I (not lose) my notes on child development. Now I can't prepare properly.
13. The child's anxiety is high. I wish it (improve).
14. The activity was too stimulating. I wish I (not plan) so many games.
15. I'm tired of this child's constant anger. I wish it (stop).
16. My comment was insensitive. I wish I (not say) anything.
17. It's very noisy in here. I wish there (not be) so many distractions.
18. I was unprepared for his reaction. I wish I (read) more about it.
19. I wish it (be) time for the fun activity now.
20. The child has been crying for five minutes. I wish somebody (comfort) them.

Ex.3 Complete the sentence using the structure I wish... Pay attention to the tense and context.

Situation 1: Your friend is about to eat a third piece of cake. You think it's a bad idea.

You say: "I wish _____."

Situation 2: You've just left your friend's house. Now you realize you forgot your phone there.

You think to yourself: "I wish _____."

Situation 3: It's raining heavily. You have to go out, and you don't have an umbrella.

You say: "I wish _____."

Situation 4: Your neighbour plays loud music every night. It's 11 PM, and the music is on again.

You think: "I wish _____."

Situation 5: You didn't learn to swim when you were a child. Now you're afraid of water.

You think: "I wish _____."

Situation 6: You see a famous actor on the street, but you're too shy to go and ask for an autograph.

You think: "I wish _____."

Situation 7: You were offered a great job in another city last year, but you refused. Now you regret it.

You think: "I wish _____."

Situation 8: You are stuck in a traffic jam. You are going to be late for an important meeting.

You say: "I wish _____."

Ex.4 Read the situations about psychological traits, behaviors, or past events. Use the prompts to express a wish or regret using:

Example:

Situation: I didn't study psychology in university, and now I regret it.

Prompt: (I / study / psychology in university)

Answer: I wish I had studied psychology in university.

1. I don't have a high emotional intelligence, and it's a problem for my relationships.
(I / have / higher emotional intelligence)
2. You interrupted the patient during their session. That was not a good thing to do.
(you / not interrupt / the patient)

3. My colleague is constantly procrastinating before writing reports, and it's very annoying.
(my colleague / stop / procrastinating)
4. We didn't conduct a follow-up study, so our data is incomplete.
(we / conduct / a follow-up study)
5. I am not very resilient under pressure, and I often get stressed.
(I / be / more resilient under pressure)
6. You aren't listening to my advice, even though I'm trying to help.
(you / listen / to my advice)
7. He didn't acknowledge his implicit biases, which affected his research.
(he / acknowledge / his implicit biases)
8. This team is not very open to constructive criticism, which hinders our progress.
(this team / be / more open to constructive criticism)

Ex.5 Instruction: Read the situations about psychological traits, behaviors, or past events. Use the prompts to express a strong wish or regret using:

Example:

Situation: I didn't pay attention in my neuroscience class, and now I regret it deeply.

Prompt: (I / pay / attention in my neuroscience class)

Answer: If only I had paid attention in my neuroscience class.

1. I don't have a lot of empathy, and it makes my work as a counselor very difficult.
(I / have / more empathy)
2. You didn't validate your client's feelings during the session. It was a critical mistake.
(you / validate / your client's feelings)

3. My colleague constantly questions my therapeutic methods, and it's incredibly frustrating.
(my colleague / stop / questioning my methods)
4. He didn't receive early intervention for his anxiety, so it became a severe disorder.
(he / receive / early intervention)
5. I am not good at setting personal boundaries, so people often take advantage of me.
(I / be / better at setting boundaries)
6. You keep avoiding the main issue in our discussions, and we are not making any progress.
(you / address / the main issue)
7. We didn't consider the participant's cultural background, which was a major oversight in our study.
(we / consider / the participant's cultural background)
8. This patient is completely resistant to feedback, which makes therapy very challenging.
(this patient / be / more open to feedback)

Ex.6 Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я бы хотел, чтобы у меня была хорошая коллекция карточек с эмоциями.
2. Она бы хотела, чтобы она лучше понимала детские страхи.
3. Мы бы хотели провести исследование по зрительному восприятию у младенцев в этом году.
4. Он бы хотел, чтобы завтрашний эксперимент прошел успешно.
5. Если бы только у меня было больше времени для наблюдения за детьми!
6. Они бы хотели, чтобы их детский сад был оснащен лучшими материалами.
7. Она бы хотела быть более опытным детским психологом.
8. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты был здесь и помог с группой детей.

9. Он бы хотел, чтобы его коллега помогал ему больше с исследованиями.
10. Если бы только наши новые развивающие игрушки прибыли скорее!

TEST

1. I wish I ... the experiment on visual perception last week.
a) didn't see b) hadn't seen c) wouldn't have seen
2. I wish I ... explain the concept of "empathy" to children.
a) will b) could c) would have
3. I wish the children ... more calm during the session.
a) are b) were c) have been
4. I wish I ... a better understanding of child emotions. I ... my approach to teaching," she thought.
a) had, would change b) would have, changed c) have, will have changed
5. She wished she ... the child's drawing of fear. It was misunderstood.
a) had kept b) hadn't kept c) didn't keep d) kept
6. He wished the researchers ... his confusion during the perception test.
a) hadn't noticed b) would have noticed c) would not have noticed
d) didn't notice
7. Children here often feel anxious. I wish they ... so anxious.
a) hadn't felt b) didn't feel c) don't feel
8. I wish I ... that scary picture in the book. It gave me nightmares.
a) had never seen b) didn't see c) wouldn't see
9. I wish I ... my young patient that I understood him before our sessions ended.
a) have told b) had told c) told d) would tell
10. I wish you ... interrupting my explanations of emotional development.
a) stop b) stopped c) have stopped d) would stop

11. She wished she ... the complex psychological test. The results were overwhelming.
a) had taken b) hadn't taken c) didn't take d) took
12. We had a great discussion about emotions. I wish you ... our group next time.
a) joined b) had joined c) would join d) will join
13. "Can you attend the workshop on visual perception?" "I wish I ..., but I can't. I'm busy."
a) would b) can c) could d) had
14. I don't have a good chart of emotions. I wish I ... a good chart of emotions!
a) had b) has c) could d) would
15. You were not at the lecture on child perception. I wish you ... there.
a) were b) would be c) had been

PART VI.
MODAL VERBS

Модальные глаголы

PART VI.
MODAL VERBS
Модальные глаголы

Модальные глаголы – это особая группа глаголов **can, may, must, should, ought to, need, shall, will, would, dare**, которые обозначают не конкретные действия, а выражают отношение говорящего к действию: возможность, способность, вероятность, обязанность, необходимость, долг, разрешение, совет и т. д.

- Модальные глаголы не употребляются самостоятельно, а только в сочетании с инфинитивом смыслового глагола (*без частицы to*), образуя составное глагольное (модальное) сказуемое.

*She **must do** it.* = Она должна сделать это.

*You **should study** harder.* = Тебе следует учиться лучше.

- После модального глагола **ought**, глаголов **to have** и **to be** в модальной функции, а также эквивалентов **to be able** и **to be allowed (to be permitted)** употребляется инфинитив с частицей *to*.

*He **ought to go** to the meeting.* = Ему следует пойти на встречу.

*She **is able to solve** the problem.* = Она способна решить эту проблему.

*The children **were allowed to go out**.* = Детям разрешили выйти на улицу.

*They **are to meet** at 6 p.m.* = Они должны встретиться в 6 часов вечера.

- Модальные глаголы называют недостаточными глаголами, так как у них отсутствует ряд грамматических форм, присущих другим глаголам:
- Они не изменяются по лицам и не имеют окончания *-s* в 3-м лице ед. числа (кроме эквивалентов модальных глаголов). *He **can swim**.* (X *cans*)
- У них нет неличных форм инфинитива, причастия и герундия, а потому не имеют сложных видовременных форм (будущего времени, длительных и перфектных форм, залога), т.е. нельзя сказать X *to must, musting, have musted, was musted*.

Модальные глаголы имеют следующие особенности:

- 1) В вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях модальные глаголы употребляются без вспомогательного глагола (кроме глагола *to have* — *Do I have to phone them?* = Я должна им позвонить? *She **doesn't have to go** there today.* = Ей нет необходимости идти туда сегодня).

- 2) В вопросительном предложении модальный глагол (точно также, как и вспомогательный) ставится перед подлежащим.

Can you cook? = Ты умеешь готовить?

May I take the book? = Можно я возьму эту книгу?

Should I go there? = Мне следует туда идти?

- 3) Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи частицы **not**, которая ставится после модального глагола. *He shouldn't call her today.* = Ему не следует звонить ей сегодня.

**Отрицательная форма модальных глаголов
(полная и сокращенная):**

Full form (полная)	Contracted form (сокращенная)
cannot*	can't
may not	mayn't **
must not	mustn't
need not	needn't
ought not	oughtn't
shall not	shan't
should not	shouldn't
will not	won't
would not	wouldn't

* Can единственный модальный глагол, с которым отрицательная частица *not* пишется слитно → **cannot**

** Сокращенная форма *mayn't* используется в речи крайне редко.

Unit 23. Can / Could / Be able (to)

CAN (Forms)

Модальный глагол и его эквивалент	Перевод	Present	Past	Future
can <i>to be able to ...</i>	мочь, уметь, быть в состоянии	can <i>am / is / are able to ...</i>	could <i>was / were able to</i>	_____ <i>will be able to ...</i>

CAN (Meanings)

Значение	Пример	Перевод
Физическая или умственная способность	<i>She can play the piano. Can you speak Spanish?</i>	Она умеет играть на пианино. Вы умеете говорить на испанском?
Возможность (объективная в определенных обстоятельствах)	<i>You can buy this book online. We can go to Paris this weekend, because I do not have to work.</i>	Вы можете купить эту книгу онлайн. Мы можем поехать в Париж в эти выходные, поскольку мне не нужно работать.
Разрешение (давать или спрашивать)	<i>You can use my car. Can I stay here?</i>	Ты можешь пользоваться моей машиной. Я могу остаться здесь?
Просьба	<i>Can you help me? / Could you help me?</i>	Ты мне можешь помочь? / Вы не могли бы мне помочь? (более вежливая форма)
Запрет (в отрицательной форме)	<i>You can't park here.</i>	Здесь парковаться запрещено (нельзя).

Примечания:

1) Модальный глагол **can** употребляется в настоящем времени и может относиться к *настоящему и будущему*. На русский язык переводится как «могу, умею, быть в состоянии».

I can give you the book today. = Я могу дать тебе эту книгу сегодня.

I can give you the book tomorrow. = Я могу дать тебе эту книгу завтра.

- ✓ Если время действия в будущем не ясно из контекста, или необходимо подчеркнуть, что действие относится к будущему времени — употребляется **shall be / will be able (to)**:

Will he be able to walk? — *He will be able to walk in a couple of months.* = *Сможет ли он ходить?* — *Он сможет ходить через пару месяцев.*

- ✓ Смысловое различие между глаголом **can** и его эквивалентом **am/is/are able (to)** в настоящем времени заключается в том, что глагол *to be able (to)* выражает возможность совершить действие в конкретном случае, а не физическую или умственную способность человека вообще:

I can swim across this river. = *Я могу переплыть эту реку.* → («могу в принципе», физическая способность вообще).

I am able to swim across this river. = *Я могу (в состоянии) переплыть эту реку.* → (*сейчас, если это необходимо*).

- ✓оборот **to be able to** может употребляться также во временах группы Perfect и после модальных глаголов.

At last! She has been able to solve the problem. = *Наконец-то! Она смогла решить эту проблему.*

2) Модальный глагол **could** употребляется в прошедшем времени и переводится как «мог, умел, могла, ...». Используется в следующих значениях:

Значение	Пример	Перевод
Общая способность в прошлом	<i>I could dance all night long when I was young.</i>	Я мог танцевать всю ночь напролет, когда был молод.
Возможность совершения действия в прошлом	<i>I could get him on the phone. I couldn't phone him before nine.</i>	Я мог до него дозвониться (была возможность). Я не мог позвонить ему до девяти (не было возможности).
Гипотетическое, возможное действие в будущем	<i>'We could go to the cinema tonight, if you want'. Be careful! You could fall.</i>	Мы могли бы сходить в кино сегодня вечером, если хочешь. Осторожно! Ты можешь упасть.
Гипотетическая возможность в прошлом, которая не была реализована (could + have V-ed/3)	<i>I could have bought that car, but I changed my mind.</i>	Я мог купить эту машину, но передумал.
Выражение критики, недовольства действиями / событиями в прошлом (could + have V-ed/3)	<i>'Why didn't you call me that you would be late? You could have warned me'.</i>	Почему ты не позвонил мне, что будешь поздно? Ты мог бы предупредить меня.

3) Модальные глаголы *can / could* часто используются в сочетании с глаголами, выражающими чувства и восприятия (*to see видеть, to hear слышать, to feel чувствовать и др.*) и обычно на русский язык не переводятся:

Can you see him? = Ты видишь его?

Can you hear the music? = Вы слышите музыку?

I could see the mountains from my window yesterday. = Я видел горы из окна вчера.

Модальные глаголы CAN / COULD в значении сомнения, удивления, недоверия

Модальные глаголы *can (could)* употребляются также для выражения сомнения, удивления, недоверия. В этих значениях они употребляются только в вопросительных и отрицательных предложениях с любой формой инфинитива.

В вопросительных предложениях: сомнение, удивление («неужели» / «разве», «неужели это правда, что...?»). На русский язык *can* и *could* переводятся здесь одинаково.

Can / Could this be true? = Неужели это правда?

В отрицательных предложениях: сильное сомнение, недоверие, при котором говорящий уверен, что этого не может быть («не может быть, чтобы»; «невероятно»).

That can't be true! / *That couldn't be true* = Не может быть, чтобы это была правда!

Выражения удивления, сомнения с различными формами инфинитива

Форма инфинитива		Конструкция с модальным глаголом	Пример	Перевод
Indefinite Infinitive	Active	<i>Can/Could</i> + subject + <i>V (inf.)</i> ?	<i>Can/Could she live in London?</i>	Неужели она живет в Лондоне?
	Passive	<i>Can/Could</i> + subject + <i>be + V-ed/3?</i>	<i>Can/Could it be done in one day?</i>	Разве это можно сделать за один день?
Continuous Infinitive		<i>Can/Could</i> + subject + <i>be + V-ing?</i>	<i>Can/could they still be sleeping?</i>	Неужели они все еще спят?

Perfect Infinitive	Active	<i>Can/Could + subject + have + V-ed/3?</i>	<i>Can/Could she have forgotten about the meeting?</i>	<i>Неужели она могла забыть о встрече?</i>
	Passive	<i>Can/Could + subject + have been + V-ed/3?</i>	<i>Can/Could the documents have been lost?</i>	<i>Неужели документы могли быть утеряны?</i>
Perfect Continuous Infinitive		<i>Can/Could + subject + have been + V-ing?</i>	<i>Can/Could she have been lying to us for years?</i>	<i>Неужели она врала нам годами?</i>

Выражение недоверия с различными формами инфинитива

Форма инфинитива		Конструкция с модальным глаголом	Пример	Перевод
Indefinite Infinitive	Active	Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + V (inf.)</i>	<i>She can't be at home.</i>	<i>Не может быть, чтобы она была дома.</i>
	Passive	Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + be + V-ed/3</i>	<i>This couldn't be done without special tools.</i>	<i>Это не может быть сделано без специальных инструментов.</i>
Continuous Infinitive		Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + be + V-ing</i>	<i>He can't be sleeping now.</i>	<i>Не может быть, чтобы он сейчас спал.</i>
Perfect Infinitive	Active	Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + have + V-ed/3</i>	<i>They can't have left already.</i> <i>They couldn't have left so early.</i>	<i>Не может быть, чтобы они уже ушли.</i> <i>Вряд ли они так рано ушли.</i>
	Passive	Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + have been + V-ed/3</i>	<i>The letter can't have been sent yet.</i>	<i>Не может быть, чтобы письмо уже отправили.</i>
Perfect Continuous Infinitive		Subject + <i>can't/couldn't + have been + V-ing</i>	<i>She can't have been waiting here for two hours.</i>	<i>Не может быть, чтобы она ждала здесь два часа.</i>

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Can you do these things? Say (write) sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

1. (understand my feelings) → *I can't always understand my feelings.*
2. (calm down when I'm angry) ...
3. (understand other people's emotions) ...
4. (stop worrying) ...
5. (say what I really think) ...
6. (control my stress) ...
7. (be kind to myself) ...
8. (forget bad memories) ...
9. (ask for support) ...

Ex.2 Could you do these things when you were a child? Say (write) sentences about yourself. Use I could or I could not...

1. (understand why I was sad) → *I could not understand why I was sad.*
2. (calm myself down) ...
3. (say «no» to friends) ...
4. (understand when I was tired) ...
5. (see when someone was upset) ...
6. (accept compliments) ...
7. (talk about my problems) ...
8. (stand up for myself) ...
9. (see the good in difficult situations) ...
10. (handle criticism well) ...

Ex.3 Fill in the following spaces using can for present, could for past and will be able to for future.

1. I think I ... understand my emotions better in a few weeks.
2. I ... control my temper better when I was in school.
3. I ... notice when I'm getting stressed but I often ignore it.
4. When I finish this book I ... to understand people better.
5. When I relax I ... to think more clearly.
6. When I was young I ... spend hours daydreaming by myself.

7. She ... already understand complex feelings when she was ten years old.
8. After good sleep you ... handle problems more easily.
9. You are explaining psychology so technically that I ... hardly understand you.
10. She ... to feel better in a few days.

Ex.4 Complete the sentences with *could* / *couldn't* / *was* / *were able to*.

1. He ... understand the psychological concept but it took him time.
2. She ... see why he was upset.
3. He ... help with my anxiety because he was too busy.
4. After the difficult conversation I practically ... think straight.
5. ... you manage stress well before you learned these techniques?
6. At last I ... to explain how I felt.
7. I ... control my reaction but it was harder than I expected.
8. We practiced daily and finally ... to change our habits.
9. In therapy she ... express herself better than anyone else.
10. It took time but we ... to find the source of the problem.

Ex.5 Ask for permission in these situations. Use Can I..., Could I..., Can't I ...? or Couldn't I...?

1. ... to talk about my feelings ... *Can I talk about my feelings?* ...
2. ... to share my personal problems with you. (be particularly polite)
3. ... to call my therapist from your phone.
4. ... to discuss my anxiety issues with you. (be particularly polite)
5. ... to join your support group. (you've already refused once)
6. ... to ask you about your counseling experience.
7. ... to attend your psychology workshop. (you've already refused once)
8. ... to come with you to the meditation class. (you've already refused once)
9. ... to read your psychology book. (be particularly polite)

Ex.6 Express surprise and doubt about the statements.

Model 1: He understands psychology well. → Can he understand psychology well? → He can't understand psychology well.

1. He remembers all his childhood traumas.
2. She is really happy with her progress.

3. They know how to manage their emotions.
4. She is having a panic attack.
5. She is looking for psychological help.
6. They are always arguing about feelings.
7. But they understand each other perfectly.
8. Children enjoy therapy sessions.
9. He is telling about his real feelings.

Model 2: She knew about the therapy. → Can she have known about the therapy? → She can't have known about the therapy.

1. He noticed the emotional changes.
2. There was a psychology conference in the city.
3. On Monday morning the client came to my office.
4. He was recommended to continue therapy.
5. His emotional state has improved greatly.
6. I don't believe it. Mary would have never refused help.

Ex.7 Translate into English, using the verb can / could.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он скрыл свои чувства.
2. Не может быть, чтобы они были в депрессии. Они выглядят вполне счастливыми.
3. Неужели они ждали психологической помощи все это время?
4. Не может быть, чтобы они не заметили нашего беспокойства. Мы были очень взволнованы.
5. Не мог он сказать такое. Он обычно очень тактичен.
6. Не может быть, чтобы этот метод помог.

Unit 24. May / Might

MAY / MIGHT (Forms)

Модальный глагол и его эквивалент	Перевод	Present	Past	Future
may	можно (разрешено), возможно (может быть)	may	might	_____
<i>to be allowed to ...</i>	разрешено, позволено	<i>am / is / are allowed to ...</i>	<i>was / were allowed to ...</i>	<i>will be allowed to ...</i>

Примечания:

- 1) Модальный глагол **may** имеет форму прошедшего времени **might**, которая используется в контексте прошедшего времени только при переводе прямой речи в косвенную:

'You may borrow this book'. → *'He said I might borrow his book'.* = Ты можешь взять эту книгу. → Он сказал, что я могу взять его книгу.

- 2) Глагол **may** имеет модальный эквивалент **to be allowed (to)** (страдательный залог глагола *allow* — *разрешать, позволять*), который употребляется с инфинитивом. Он выражает разрешение и может использоваться там, где форма **may** невозможна (например, в будущем, прошедшем или с другими грамматическими формами):

You will be allowed to use your phone after class. = Тебе разрешат пользоваться телефоном после урока.

Yesterday we were allowed to leave earlier. = Вчера нам разрешили уйти пораньше.

I have never been allowed to drive my father's car. = Мне никогда не разрешили водить машину отца.

MAY / MIGHT (Meanings)

Значение	Пример	Перевод
Разрешение (давать или спрашивать)	You may leave now. May I ask you a question? Excuse me, sir. Might I borrow these files for a moment, please?	Вы можете уйти сейчас. Можно задать вопрос? Прошу прощения, сэр. Могу я взять эти документы на минуту, пожалуйста?

Объективная возможность (только в утвердительных предложениях с Indefinite Infinitive), относящаяся к настоящему или будущему	You may order a taxi by telephone. He may find this book in the library.		Ты можешь заказать такси по телефону. Он может найти эту книгу в библиотеке.
Неодобрение, упрек, осуждение (только с формой <i>might</i>)	might + V (Inf.) – в настоящем или будущем	You <i>might</i> come to see me. You <i>might</i> go and help him.	Вы могли бы прийти навестить меня. Ты мог бы пойти и помочь ему.
	might + have V-ed/3 — в прошлом	He <i>might</i> have phoned the same day.	Он мог бы позвонить в тот же день (но не позвонил).

Примечания:

1) Модальный глагол **may** в значении *спрашивать/давать разрешение* используется реже и, скорее, в нейтрально-формальном стиле, чем **can / could**, в то время как модальный глагол **might** выражает более «вежливый» тон в сравнении с *may*. *Can* чаще используется в повседневной, разговорной речи, а *could* в более вежливой форме обращения с просьбой.

May I ask you a question? = *Можно задать вам вопрос?* → (нейтрально-формальный стиль)

Might/Could I make a phone call, please? = *Можно сделать телефонный звонок?* → (более вежливая форма обращения)

You can borrow my car if you want. = *Можешь взять мою машину, если хочешь.* → (в неформальный, разговорный стиль)

2) Модальный глагол **may** в отрицательной форме выражает запрет:

You **may not** park here. = *Здесь нельзя парковаться.*

May довольно редко употребляется в отрицательных ответах на вопросы о разрешении. Чаще в ответах встречается *can't* или более категоричное и эмоциональное *mustn't*:

May I smoke here? → *No, you can't. / No, you mustn't.* = *Можно (мне) закурить здесь?* → *Нет, нельзя. / Нет, нельзя (звучит более категорично).*

3) Глагол **may**, как и **can**, может употребляется для выражения объективной возможности (возможности, зависящей от определенных обстоятельств). Некоторое различие состоит в том, что глагол *can* подразумевает вполне реальную возможность, а употребление *may* означает, скорее, предполагаемую возможность.

Модальные глаголы MAY / MIGHT в значении предположения

Модальный глагол *may (might)* чаще всего выражает предположение с оттенком сомнения, неуверенности. В этом значении он употребляется только в утвердительных и отрицательных предложениях с любой формой инфинитива. Соответствует русскому «возможно, может быть». *Might* выражает большую степень сомнения (меньшую степень уверенности).

Форма инфинитива		Конструкции с модальным глаголом, относящиеся к настоящему или будущему времени	Пример	Перевод
Indefinite Infinitive	Active	Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>V (inf.)</i>	<i>He may/might be ill.</i> <i>He may/might not be there now.</i>	Он, может быть (возможно), болен. Возможно, его нет там сейчас.
	Passive	Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>be</i> + <i>V-ed/3</i>	<i>I may/might be invited to the meeting.</i>	Меня, возможно, пригласят на встречу.
Continuous Infinitive		Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>be</i> + <i>V-ing</i>	<i>He may/might be sleeping now.</i>	Возможно, он сейчас спит.
Форма инфинитива		Конструкции с модальным глаголом, относящиеся к прошлому	Пример	Перевод
Perfect Infinitive	Active	Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>have</i> + <i>V-ed/3</i>	<i>She may/might have left.</i>	Может быть, она уже уехала.
	Passive	Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>have been</i> + <i>V-ed/3</i>	<i>He wasn't at the party.</i> <i>He might have been invited but decided not to come.</i>	Его не было на вечеринке. Его, возможно, пригласили, но он решил не приходить.
Perfect Continuous Infinitive		Subject + <i>may/might</i> + <i>have been</i> + <i>V-ing</i>	<i>Why didn't he answer the phone? He may/might have been sleeping.</i>	Почему он не ответил на звонок? Возможно, он спал.

Примечания:

Модальный глагол **may** обычно не используется в вопросительных предложениях о вероятности / возможности действия. В этом случае можно использовать конструкцию *be likely* или *Do you think ...*, *Could (Couldn't)*:

Is he likely to win the competition? = Есть ли вероятность, что он выиграет соревнование? (not ~~May he win the competition...?~~).

Do you think she may come to the meeting? = Как думаешь, она может прийти на встречу? (not ~~May she come to the meeting?~~).

Could it be that you don't want to leave? = *Может быть, ты не хочешь уходить?*

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Answer the questions using may/might.

1. What psychology topic are you going to study next?
2. What is she going to do after her therapy?
3. Who is going to help you with your anxiety?
4. Where are you going to practice mindfulness?
5. What relaxation technique are you going to try?
6. What are you going to discuss with your counselor?
7. When will you be ready to help others?
8. How are you going to improve your mood?

Ex.2 Write was(n't) allowed to/were(n't) allowed to or could(n't). If either is possible, write them both.

1. When I was in therapy, patients ... could/were allowed to ... choose their own counselor.
2. Although he was very upset, he ... enter the therapy room without an appointment.
3. To everyone's surprise, the children ... stay with their parents during the session.
4. Although I needed help urgently, I ... speak to the psychologist that day.
5. The doctor feared that he would get worse if he ... stop therapy.
6. She ... leave the session until she had expressed her feelings.
7. When negative thoughts ... be controlled, the anxiety increased.
8. I ... visit my friend in the hospital, but I ... send her supportive messages.
9. The teenagers ... discuss their relationship problems openly.
10. Before the counseling ended, I ... share my emotional experience.

Ex.3 Write these sentences in a different way using may or might.

1. Perhaps David is in a therapy session. → He **might be** in a therapy session.
2. Perhaps David is feeling anxious.
3. Perhaps he is meditating.
4. Perhaps he needs some time alone.
5. Perhaps he was stressed yesterday.
6. Perhaps he left the session early.
7. Perhaps he had to cancel the appointment.
8. Perhaps he was practicing relaxation techniques yesterday.

Ex.4 Re-write the sentences using may / might / may not /might not in the way shown.

*Example: Perhaps he is nervous. → He **might be** nervous.*

1. Perhaps he is shy.
2. Perhaps she does not want to talk about it.
3. Perhaps she is feeling better now.
4. Perhaps he doesn't want to share his feelings.
5. Perhaps they are stressed.
6. Perhaps she is busy thinking.
7. Perhaps he will feel better soon.
8. Perhaps they don't understand their emotions.

Ex.5 Answer the following questions with suitable suggestions, using may (or might) and the words in brackets.

- a. Terry:** Why is Anna avoiding social situations? She used to be so outgoing.
You: (have social anxiety) → She **may have** social anxiety.
- b. Jill:** Why didn't Mark come to the support group meeting?
You: (feel uncomfortable sharing feelings) → He **might have felt** uncomfortable sharing feelings.
- c. Sue:** Why is Lisa so irritable today?
You: (sleep poorly last night)
- d. Roy:** Why is Tom reading psychology books?
You: (want to understand himself better)

- e. Jill: Where could I have put my therapy notes?
You: (be in the desk drawer)
- f. Zoe: Why hasn't anyone mentioned my emotional progress?
You: (wait for the right moment)
- g. Tim: Why does Emma look so happy today?
You: (have good news from her therapist)
- h. Ella: Why isn't Dr. Brown in his office today?
You: (be at a psychology conference)
- i. John: Why didn't Sarah attend the mindfulness class?
You: (decide to try another approach)

Ex.6 Translate the following sentences into English using 'can' ('could') and 'may' ('might').

1. Может быть, он передумает о терапии.
2. Может быть, терапия не поможет.
3. Не может быть, чтобы терапия не помогла.
4. Неужели терапия поможет?
5. Может быть, он уже понял свои чувства.
6. Может быть, он не понял своих чувств.
7. Не может быть, чтобы он понял свои чувства так быстро.
8. Просто не может быть, чтобы он понял свои чувства.
9. Неужели он понял свои чувства?
10. И когда это он мог понять свои чувства?
11. Может быть, они ждут психологической помощи.
12. Может быть, они не ждут помощи.
13. Не может быть, чтобы они ждали помощи.
14. Неужели они ждут помощи?
15. И какую помощь они могут ждать?
16. Просто не может быть, чтобы они ждали помощи.

Ex.7 Underline the word or words that are possible in each sentence.

1. Do you know where I left my therapy notes?' 'He **might/can have left** them on the table.'

2. If I hadn't started therapy, I **may/might have continued** suffering.
3. They **might/could have chosen** any therapist, but they picked Dr. Smith.
4. I **could/may have continued** with the previous therapist, but I thought I should try someone new.
5. In the past, people with mental health issues **could/may be misunderstood**.
6. I **may/could have finished** the emotional exercises by the time you return.
7. By the next session I **can/may have understood** my anxiety better.
8. It **can/could be** possible one day to understand human emotions completely.

Unit 25. Must / Have to / Be to

MUST (Forms)

Модальный глагол и его эквивалент	Перевод	Present	Past	Future
must	должен, обязан, нужно, необходимо	must	_____	_____
<i>have to</i>		<i>have / has to ...</i>	<i>had to</i>	<i>will have to ...</i>
<i>be to</i>		<i>am / is / are to ...</i>	<i>was / were to ...</i>	_____

Примечания:

1) Модальный глагол **must** имеет только одну форму — настоящего времени и не изменяется в косвенной речи.

You must come at once. = Ты должен немедленно прийти. → *He said that I must come at once.* = Он сказал, что я должен немедленно прийти.

2) Модальный глагол **must** в предложении относится к действию, совершаемому в настоящем или в будущем времени. Будущее выражается настоящим временем с помощью контекста и наречий или наречных сочетаний, указывающих будущее время, например, «завтра, скоро, на следующей неделе, через час».

"You must submit the form by tomorrow." = Вы должны представить анкету к завтрашнему дню.

MUST (Meanings)

Значение	Пример	Перевод
Обязанность, необходимость, долг	<i>If he wants to go to England, he must obtain a visa first.</i> <i>People must take care of nature.</i>	<i>Если он хочет поехать в Англию, сначала ему необходимо получить визу.</i> <i>Люди должны заботиться о природе.</i>
Приказ	<i>You must prepare the sales report.</i>	<i>Вы должны подготовить отчет по продажам.</i>
Настоятельный совет	<i>You must have dinner with us!</i> <i>You must talk to your boss about the amount of work you have to do.</i>	<i>Ты обязательно должен поужинать с нами!</i> <i>Ты должен поговорить со своим начальником о том, какой объем работы тебе приходится выполнять.</i>

Категорический запрет	<i>You mustn't stop to speak with strangers.</i>	Ты не должна останавливаться и разговаривать с незнакомыми людьми.
-----------------------	---	--

TO HAVE TO (Meanings)

<i>Значение</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
Обязанность, необходимость, обусловленная внешними обстоятельствами	<i>I often have to travel on business.</i> <i>I have to wear a uniform at work.</i>	Мне часто приходится совершать деловые поездки. Мне приходится носить униформу на работе.

TO BE TO (Meanings)

<i>Значение</i>	<i>Пример</i>	<i>Перевод</i>
Предварительная договоренность, часть плана, расписание	The president <i>is to visit</i> Brazil next month. We <i>are to meet</i> at the airport. The train <i>is to leave</i> at 6 o'clock.	Президент <i>должен посетить</i> Бразилию в следующем месяце (запланированное действие). Мы <i>должны встретиться</i> в аэропорту (предварительная договорённость). Поезд <i>должен отправиться</i> в 6 часов (по расписанию).
Строгий приказ / запрет	You <i>are not to leave</i> this room until I return. <i>No one is to open</i> the fire exit except in case of emergency.	Ты <i>не должен покидать</i> эту комнату, пока я не вернусь (строгий приказ). <i>Никто не должен открывать</i> запасной выход, кроме случаев чрезвычайной ситуации.
Что-то, что считается неизбежным (предстоит, суждено)	He <i>was never to see</i> his homeland again. If we <i>are to survive</i> , we must find water.	Ему <i>было не суждено</i> увидеть свою родину снова. Если нам <i>суждено</i> выжить, мы должны найти воду.

Примечания:

1) Глагольная форма **mustn't** значение необязательности не выражает. Для указания на необязательность действия или отсутствия необходимости используются отрицательные формы глаголов **have to** или **need**. В противном случае получится отрицательный приказ:

Вам нет необходимости завтра работать, если у вас нет желания. = You needn't work tomorrow if you don't want to. = You don't have to work if you don't want to. (NOT: You mustn't work tomorrow if you don't want to.)

Вопрос: *Must I do it?* = Должен (ли) я сделать это?

Предполагаемые ответы:

Yes, you must. = Да, должен.

No, you must not. = Нет, нельзя. (строгое запрещение)

No, you needn't. = Нет, не нужно. (нет необходимости)

В тех случаях, когда в прошлом отсутствовала необходимость совершения действия, но оно тем не менее было реализовано, используется отрицательная форма глагола **need** в сочетании с перфектным инфинитивом: **needn't + Perfect Infinitive**.

I needn't have gone so early to the office. The meeting was cancelled. = Мне не нужно было приходить на работу так рано. Собрание отменили. → Действие было совершено, но в нем не было необходимости.

She needn't have worried about the exam; it was easy. = Ей не нужно было волноваться за экзамен. Он был лёгким (но она волновалась).

2) Модальный глагол **must** и эквивалент **have to** имеют схожее значение и используются для выражения обязанности, необходимости. Однако, есть небольшое отличие в употреблении:

- **must** часто используется, когда говорящий ощущает обязанность лично или морально и скорее означает осознанную необходимость, исходящую изнутри, а не вызванную по принуждению внешними обстоятельствами;

I really must stop smoking. = Я действительно должен бросить курить.

- **have to** — когда необходимость диктуется правилами, обстоятельствами, внешними факторами.

Do you often have to travel on business? = Тебе часто приходится совершать деловые поездки?

В своем модальном значении глагол **have + to-Infinitive** употребляется во всех видо-временных формах, а вопросительная и отрицательная формы глагола **have (to)** всегда образуются с помощью вспомогательных глаголов **do/does, did**.

Примеры использования модальных глаголов для выражения необходимости / отсутствия необходимости

Время	Необходимость, вызванная обстоятельствами (вынужденная или по собственной воле)	Необходимость как результат договоренности, плана, расписания	Отсутствие необходимости
Present	<p>I must work harder if I want to get this promotion. = Я должен работать лучше, если я хочу получить это повышение (внутренняя мотивация).</p> <p>I have to work overtime to pay off my car loan. = Мне приходится работать сверхурочно, чтобы оплатить кредит на машину (внешние обстоятельства).</p>	<p>As we have agreed, I am to meet her at 7 p.m. = Как мы и договаривались, я должен встретить её в 7 часов вечера (договоренность).</p> <p>The ceremony is to take place in the main hall. = Церемония должна пройти в главном зале (согласно плану).</p> <p>The meeting is to begin at 9:00 sharp. = Совещание должно начаться ровно в 9:00 (расписание).</p>	<p>We don't have to work today. It's an official day off. = Нам не нужно работать сегодня. Это официальный выходной.</p> <p>Fortunately, I needn't work today, so I can finally go to the doctor. = К счастью, мне не нужно работать сегодня, поэтому я могу, наконец, сходить к врачу.</p>
Past	<p>I didn't finish the report yesterday, so I had to work late. = Я не закончил отчет вчера, поэтому мне пришлось задержаться на работе (внешние обстоятельства).</p> <p>I had to work yesterday because I wanted to finish the project ahead of schedule. = Мне пришлось работать вчера, потому что я хотел закончить проект досрочно (внутренняя мотивация).</p>	<p>As we had agreed, I was to meet her at 7 p.m. = Как мы и договаривались, я должен был встретить её в 7 часов вечера.</p> <p>The ceremony was to take place in the main hall. = Церемония должна была пройти в главном зале.</p> <p>The meeting was to begin at 9:00 sharp. = Совещание должно было начаться ровно в 9:00.</p>	<p>I didn't have to work yesterday, so I spent the whole day fishing. = Мне не нужно было работать вчера, поэтому я весь день провел на рыбалке (действие не было совершено, т.к. в нем не было необходимости).</p> <p>I needn't have come to the office yesterday. The meeting was cancelled. = Мне не нужно было приходить на работу. Собрание было отменено. (действие было совершено, но в нем не было необходимости).</p>

Future	My colleague is sick, so I will have to work tomorrow. = Мой коллега заболел, поэтому мне придётся завтра работать (внешние обстоятельства).	_____	He won't have to work next Friday. = Мне не нужно будет работать в следующую пятницу.
---------------	---	-------	--

Модальный глагол must в значении предположения, в котором говорящий практически уверен

Форма инфинитива		Конструкции с модальным глаголом, относящиеся к настоящему времени	Пример	Перевод
Indefinite Infinitive	Active	Subject + must + V (inf.)	"You've been practicing for months. You must play the piano very well by now."	"Ты практиковался месяцами. Должно быть, ты играешь на пианино очень хорошо."
	Passive	Subject + must + be + V-ed/3	"This parcel is marked 'Fragile'. It must be handled with care."	"На этой посылке пометка «Хрупкое». Должно быть, с ней обращаются осторожно."
Continuous Infinitive		Subject + must + be + V-ing	"Look, the lights are on in his office. He must be working late again."	"Смотри, в его офисе горит свет. Должно быть, он работает допоздна снова."
Форма инфинитива		Конструкции с модальным глаголом, относящиеся к прошлому	Пример	Перевод
Perfect Infinitive	Active	Subject + must + have + V-ed/3	"She didn't answer the phone. She must have gone to bed already."	"Она не ответила на звонок. Должно быть, она легла спать."
	Passive	Subject + must + have been + V-ed/3	"The window is clean and shiny. It must have been cleaned recently."	"Окно чистое и блестит. Должно быть, его помыли недавно."
Perfect Continuous Infinitive		Subject + must + have been + V-ing	"When I saw her red eyes, I knew she must have been crying ."	"Когда я увидел её красные глаза, я понял, что она, должно быть, плакала."

Примечания:

1) Модальный глагол *must* в вероятностных значениях предположения употребляется только в утвердительных предложениях и не употребляется в отрицательной форме. В этом случае обычно используется *cannot/can't*, чтобы сказать, что что-то определено не так, потому что это логически или практически невозможно, или крайне маловероятно.

He is in London now. He can't be at home. = Сейчас он в Лондоне. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома (X He mustn't be at home.)

Также, для выражения отрицательной вероятности употребляются: отрицательные приставки, отрицательные местоимения, слова *fail* («не суметь, потерпеть неудачу»), *never*, *probably*, *obviously*, *evidently*, *perhaps*, *apparently* и др.

He must have **misunderstood** you. = Вероятно, он не понял вас.

The letter must have **never** been answered. = На письмо, очевидно, так и не ответили.

He must have **failed** to come. = Он, должно быть, не смог прийти.

2) Глагол *must* используется в ситуации, когда утверждение о вероятности действия основано не только на личном мнении говорящего, но и на объективных фактах. Это утверждение является своего рода логическим выводом, следующим из сделанных говорящим наблюдениям.

You've been coughing a lot. You **must be ill**. = Ты много кашляешь. Наверное, ты болен.

They look happy. They **must have won** the game. = Они выглядят счастливыми. Должно быть, выиграли игру.

3) Для выражения предположения, относящегося к будущему, употребляется **to be (un)likely to**.

It's very cloudy. It **is likely** to rain later. = Очень облачно. Вероятно, позже пойдет дождь.

He hasn't trained at all. He **is unlikely** to finish the marathon. = Он совсем не тренировался. Вряд ли он финиширует в марафоне.

EXERCISES

Ex.1 Put in (must) or (have to).

1. This is important for my mental health. I ... remember it.
2. I'm feeling very stressed. I ... relax.
3. Your thinking patterns are negative. You ... change them.
4. You're very anxious. You ... to calm down.
5. I'm feeling overwhelmed. I ... take a break.

6. I have constant worries. I ... learn to manage them.
7. I ... to see my therapist by 5 o'clock.
8. I ... to attend a stress management workshop.

Ex.2 Put in (must) or (had to).

1. She ... write in her feeling's diary every day last month.
2. When he was very anxious, he ... do breathing exercises often.
3. When my friend was away I ... handle my problems alone.
4. My negative thoughts are strong. I ... fight them.
5. We ... be patient, or we might get frustrated.
6. I never remember the relaxation techniques, I always ... look them up.
7. The therapy session was intense and we ... stop for a moment!
8. As I missed my appointment I ... reschedule it.

Ex.3 Make questions with (have to).

Example: She has to practice relaxation. → What does she have to practice?

1. She felt very anxious and had to leave the room. Why ...?
2. He has to monitor his thoughts. His mind is very negative. Why ...?
3. I have to meet my counselor early tomorrow. What time ...?
4. We had to pay for the psychology course. How much ...?
5. Sarah has to work on her self-esteem tonight. Why ...?
6. He has to wait till his therapist returns. How long ...?
7. We have to learn all these psychological terms! How many terms exactly ...?
8. I had to ask a friend for advice. Why ...?
9. She has to answer many questions in therapy. How many questions ...?

Ex.4 Make negative sentences with (have to).

1. "Do you hide your feelings?" "I'm learning to express them so I don't have to hide them."
2. "Does he go to anger management?" "He has learned to control his temper so he ..."
3. "Do you analyze your dreams every night?" "It's not necessary for me now so I ..."
4. "Does she see her therapist every week?" "She's doing much better so she ..."

5. "Is it necessary for us to discuss this memory?" «No, we ...»
6. "Shall I help you with this exercise?" "No, I can do it myself, you ..."
7. "Does he do deep meditation?" "His anxiety is mild, so he ..."
8. "Did you give advice?" "They solved the problem themselves, so I ..."
9. "Did you take notes during therapy?" "I remembered everything, so I ..."
10. "Do you use complicated techniques?" "No, I prefer simple methods, so I ..."

Ex.5 Underline the correct verb form.

1. Personal information mustn't / don't have to be shared with others.
2. Friends mustn't / don't have to ask for permission to feel their emotions.
3. You mustn't / don't have to tell anyone what I confessed. It's personal.
4. We mustn't / don't have to rush emotional healing, it takes time.
5. You mustn't / don't have to talk about trauma if you're not ready.
6. You mustn't / don't have to use harsh words. They can hurt feelings.
7. You mustn't / don't have to rethink your decision now. You made it carefully.
8. We mustn't / don't have to explain the feeling to him. He needs to discover it himself.
9. We mustn't / don't have to describe the emotion. He's already feeling it.
10. You mustn't / don't have to schedule another session today; we can meet next week.

Ex.6 Make the following sentences interrogative.

1. The new support group is to start next month.
2. The psychology lecture is to begin in a week.
3. He was to meet his counselor at 10.
4. She was to discuss her progress in two days.

Ex.7 Write comments with must after the following sentences.

1. You've been in therapy for six months. / (you/make progress) → **You must be making progress.**
2. They've been meditating for two hours. / (they/feel calm)
3. He's overcome his fear of public speaking. / (he/feel confident)

4. Your friend is seeing a counselor. / (you/feel supportive)
5. Your daughter has learned to manage her anxiety. / (you/feel proud of her)

Ex.8 Rewrite the parts in bold using must have..

1. **He practiced mindfulness every day for a year. Obviously, it helped him.**
→**It must have helped him.**
2. He seemed calm, but I'm sure he was nervous inside.
3. The therapist was very experienced. Of course, she understood your problems.
4. You look very peaceful. It seems meditation helped you.
5. There's nobody in the waiting room. Probably they've rescheduled their appointments.
6. My anxiety workbook isn't there. Perhaps someone has borrowed it.

Ex.9 Translate the following sentences into English using (must)

1. Я должна понять свои эмоции.
2. Она, должно быть, понимает свои эмоции.
3. Он, должно быть, работает над самооценкой.
4. Мы должны обсудить эту проблему.
5. Должно быть, он справляется со стрессом.
6. Должно быть, он хорошо управляет эмоциями.
7. Должно быть, он еще в терапии.
8. Она, должно быть, ждет нас на сеансе.
9. Она должна ждать нас на сеансе.
10. По-видимому, он взял эмоции под контроль.
11. Должно быть, они тогда были в терапии.
12. Должно быть, он медитирует.
13. Вероятно, медитация уже закончилась.
14. Он должен практиковать дыхательные упражнения, чтобы справиться с тревогой.
15. Не шумите: пациенты, должно быть, отдыхают.

Ex.10 Translate the following negative sentences into English.

Model 1: She must have given him no opportunity to object.

1. Должно быть, он не понял своих чувств.
2. Должно быть, они не посещали терапию.
3. Должно быть, она не имела опыта в психологии.
4. Должно быть, он не получил помощи.
5. Должно быть, она не обращает внимания на свои эмоции.
6. Должно быть, у них нет психологических проблем.
7. Он, должно быть, не получил поддержки.
8. Она, должно быть, не пыталась понять свои чувства.

Model 2: Probably he didn't know about it.

1. Должно быть, они еще не начали терапию.
2. Вероятно, они этого не понимают.
3. По-видимому, это не было объяснено правильно.
4. Вероятно, это не работает.
5. Это, должно быть, не заняло много времени.
6. Должно быть, он придет на сеанс завтра.

Unit 26. Should / Ought (to)

SHOULD / OUGHT (TO) (Forms)

Модальный глагол	Перевод	Present	Past	Future
<i>should / ought to</i>	должен, следует, следовало бы	should / ought to ...	_____	_____

Примечания:

1) Модальные глаголы **should** и **ought to** выражают моральную обязанность, долг, совет, предположения, ожидания и переводятся как «должен», «следует», «следовало бы» и используются только в форме настоящего времени. Модальные глаголы **should** и **ought to** имеют сходный смысл и могут свободно заменять друг друга. Они не изменяются в непрямой речи.

You should be more careful when crossing the street. = You ought to be more careful when crossing the street (оба варианта означают «тебе следует быть осторожнее»).

“You should see a doctor,” she said. → She said that I should see a doctor. = «Тебе следует сходить к врачу», — сказала она. → Она сказала, что мне следует сходить к врачу.

2) Модальный глагол **ought to** в современном английском языке употребляется гораздо реже. Как правило, он используется в случаях, когда желательность действия обусловлена тем, что это действие правильно с точки зрения морали и справедливости.

We ought to help those who are in need. = Мы должны помочь тем, кто в беде (речь о нравственном долге).

People ought to respect their parents. = Людям следует уважать своих родителей (моральный принцип).

EXERCISES

Ex.1 You are giving advice to a friend. Use should, shouldn't.

1. You ... ignore your feelings, it's bad for your mental health.
2. You ... keep everything inside, it usually makes things worse.
3. You ... talk to someone if you're feeling sad.

4. You ... think about your needs if you want to be happy.
5. You ... read that book about happiness.
6. You ... try meditation if you are often stressed.
7. You ... compare your life to others'.
8. Your way of thinking is negative. I think you ... try to change it.
9. You ... learn about emotions, it can help you.
10. He looks unhappy. He ... talk to someone.

Ex.2 Complete the following sentences with your own ideas.

1. I think people should ...
2. I don't think friends should ...
3. I think everyone should ...
4. My mind should ...
5. My family should not ...
6. I really should ...
7. I should not ...

Ex.3 Comment on the meaning of the verbs should/ought to. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I think parents should do more to understand their children's emotions.
2. You ought to think about your mental health.
3. You shouldn't have ignored your feelings for so long.
4. I shouldn't worry too much. It's not good for my health.
5. I don't think we ought to judge people so quickly.
6. You shouldn't have avoided talking about your problems.
7. She should be happy to get professional help.
8. The first therapy session should be quite simple.
9. Why should I share my personal thoughts?
10. Meditation should help with anxiety.
11. You should have asked for help earlier. Why should you have suffered alone?
12. When is he going to feel better? — How should I know?
13. Oughtn't you to be more understanding?
14. Do you think I should see a counselor?
15. Do you think I should try meditation or yoga for stress?
16. My family doesn't think I should study psychology next year.

17. I think we ought to talk about this problem now.
18. You should have told me that you were feeling depressed. I could have helped you.

Ex.4 Match these situations with the advice you might give in each one.

1. Someone is feeling very anxious
2. Someone can't stop negative thoughts
3. Someone doesn't understand their emotions
4. Someone is going to see a therapist for the first time
5. Someone has an important psychology exam tomorrow
6. Someone hasn't got any friends to talk to
7. Someone is feeling very stressed at work
8. Someone is emotionally exhausted
9. Someone has noticed a friend showing signs of depression
10. Someone is having trouble sleeping because of worries

Advice:

- a) They should talk to a professional
- b) They ought to practice relaxation techniques
- c) They should try to get a good night's sleep
- d) They ought to learn about basic psychology
- e) They should tell someone about it
- f) They ought to take a complete rest
- g) They should try mindfulness exercises
- h) They ought to join a support group
- i) They should not worry — it's normal to be nervous
- j) They ought to write down their thoughts

REVISION **(Modal verbs)**

Ex.1 Complete the sentences. Use *must* or *can't* and the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. You've been meditating for an hour. You ... feeling very calm. (be)
2. You ... anxious. You look so relaxed! (be)

3. There are no patients in the waiting room. The psychologist ... finished for the day. (finish)
4. Peter ... stressed. I've just seen him smiling and laughing. (be)
5. I ... my therapy notes at home. I can remember having them with me when I left. (leave)
6. You ignored all the psychological advice? You ... serious about getting better! (be)
7. 'I've just completed a course in cognitive behavioral therapy.' 'That ... very useful!' (be)

Ex.2 Choose the correct form of the verbs.

1. You **must be / can't be** very proud of your progress in therapy.
2. We thought our friend would come to the support group, but he didn't even call. I suppose he **must be / must have been** too busy.
3. The new therapy method has been so successful I guess it **must be / can't be** easy to get an appointment.
4. I'm sure you could manage your anxiety if you really tried. You **must be using / can't be using** the right techniques.
5. I've just called the counseling center, but I can't get an answer. I suppose they **may have / may be having** a staff meeting.
6. I don't know why you wanted to try that therapy. You **might have enjoyed / can't have enjoyed** talking about painful memories.
7. I can't meet this afternoon. I have a therapy session and the psychologist **may be coming / must be coming** to my home today.
8. You'll have to review these emotional exercises again. They're not working. You **might have been practicing / can't have been practicing** regularly.
9. You **must be / must have been** relieved after sharing your feelings. Would you like to talk more?

Ex.3 Match the two halves of these sentences.

1. You can't have studied psychology	a. after all your emotional work.
2. You must know therapy takes time	b. after years of self-reflection.
3. You must have learned some useful techniques	c. if you've been in therapy.
4. You can't be ready to finish therapy	d. without learning about emotions.
5. You must be making progress	e. when you've just started.
6. You may find it difficult to change	f. during your personal growth.

Ex.4 Use 'must, must not, have to, be to, should, ought to' to complete the sentences.

1. Anna's little brother is crying because he can't find his toy. She feels guilty — she took it earlier.
→ Anna ___ give the toy back and say sorry.
2. He lied to his parents, and now he feels terrible. He really ___ tell them the truth.
3. Mary doesn't want to go to work today, but she ___ — her boss will be angry if she stays home.
4. The doctor looked very serious and said:
→ "You ___ stay in bed for three days."
5. I usually take the bus, but today I ___ walk. There's a transport strike.
6. You look so tired! You ___ take a break and go for a walk.
7. He doesn't like wearing a tie, but he ___ at his new job. It's part of the dress code.
8. You ___ not tell anyone about this conversation. It's confidential.
9. Tom feels he ___ talk to his friend about the problem. He promised to help.
10. Tom ___ talk to his boss before leaving — it's a company rule.
11. Tom ___ meet his therapist tomorrow at 6 p.m. — it's in the schedule.
12. A: I feel so exhausted. — B: You ___ take a break!
13. A: Why are you leaving so early? — B: I ___ pick up my son from school.
14. A: When are you meeting the new client? — B: I ___ him at 3 p.m.
15. Lisa feels guilty about her words. She knows she ___ apologize to her friend.

**Ex.5 Complete the sentences with the correct modal verb: *must / can't / may / might + (base verb or have + past participle)*.
Decide if it's about the present or the past, and explain your reasoning.**

1. The light is on in Sarah's office. She ___ (work) late again.
2. He looks very happy. He ___ (pass) his exam.
3. The door is locked and nobody answers. They ___ (be) at home.
4. I'm not sure where Tom is. He ___ (be) in the library, or he ___ (go) home already.
5. Look at that dark sky. It ___ (rain) soon.
6. There's an empty coffee cup on the desk. Someone ___ (be) here recently.
7. It's only 7 a.m. They ___ (be awake) yet — they usually sleep until nine.

8. Did he fail the test again? He ____ (study) hard enough.
9. I don't see Emma anywhere. She ____ (be) in the garden — I heard the door open a few minutes ago.
10. He looks surprised. He ____ (know) about the plan.

Ex.6 Read each situation carefully. Then make a logical conclusion using *must, can't, may, or might* (+ base verb / have + past participle).

1. *The Missing Sandwich*

There was a sandwich in the fridge this morning. Now it's gone. John is sitting at the table with a plate and some crumbs. → He **must have eaten** it.

2. *The Quiet House*

It's 10 p.m., and all the lights in your neighbor's house are off. Their car isn't in the driveway.

→ They ____ (be) at home.

→ They ____ (be visiting) friends.

3. *The Late Message*

Your friend promised to text you when she arrived in Paris. It's already evening, and you haven't heard from her.

→ She ____ (forget) to text you.

→ Or her phone ____ (die).

4. *The Open Window*

You come home and see the window wide open. You're sure you closed it in the morning.

→ Someone ____ (open) it while you were out.

→ Or you ____ (forget) to close it.

5. *The New Car*

You see your colleague driving a brand-new car, and last week he said he was broke.

→ He ____ (borrow) the money from someone.

→ He ____ (win) the lottery!

6. *The Noisy Neighbors*

You hear loud music from your neighbors' flat at 2 a.m. on a Wednesday.

- They ____ (have) a party again.
- Or they ____ (celebrate) something special.

7. *The Wet Dog*

Your dog comes home soaking wet, but it hasn't rained today.

- He ____ (jump) into the river again.
- Or someone ____ (wash) him.

8. *The Empty Classroom*

You walk into the classroom — the lights are off, and all the desks are clean and empty.

- The students ____ (go) to the assembly.
- The lesson ____ (be cancelled).

9. *The Nervous Colleague*

Sarah keeps looking at her watch and checking her phone. She looks anxious.

- She ____ (wait) for an important call.
- She (expect) some bad news.

10. *The Surprise Gift*

You find a small wrapped box on your desk with your name on it, but no note.

- It ____ (be) from your friend.
- Or it ____ (be left) there by mistake.

Ex.7 Write a sentence for each of these situations using *must* / *can't* / *may* / *might* (*have*).

1. *Yesterday was your last therapy session. I don't believe you're still having the same problems.*
→ ***You can't have practiced the techniques regularly.***
2. *It was your idea to try meditation. Surely you don't think it's useless?*
→ ***She can't think meditation is useless.***
3. Michael has been seeing a counselor for six months. Today he said he feels much better. The counseling
4. When Maria finished her therapy, she felt completely different. Perhaps the approach worked for her. The therapeutic approach

5. James said he was feeling anxious, but he looks so calm! His meditation practice might be helping. He
6. This relaxation technique is making me feel dizzy — I should stop! I'm sure it's not right for me. It
7. I don't know which therapy method would work best for me. My friend recommended mindfulness, so perhaps I should try it. It
8. Dr. Brown is always so punctual. The session should have started twenty minutes ago but he's not here. I know there's bad traffic this morning. He

Ex.8 Express your assumption using “may” with the words in brackets.

Example: *She didn't come . (she , to forget , the meeting) → She may have forgotten about the meeting.*

1. Why is he so stressed? (he, to have, a lot of pressure at work)
2. Let's not ask Anna now. (she, to focus on a task)
3. Why didn't he join the group activity? (he, to feel, a bit anxious)
4. Why hasn't the client given feedback yet? (they, to need, more time to think)
5. I haven't seen Alex in the office today. (he, to work from home)
6. Why is the participant so confused? (he, not to understand, the instructions)
7. I wish I had attended the workshop. (they, to learn new techniques now)
8. What are they discussing so actively? (the manager, to present a new project)
9. Where is the psychologist? (she, to have a session with a client)
10. I've been trying to call Dr. Brown all day. (she, to lead a seminar all day).

Ex.9 Express probability, using must.

Examples:

1. *It's late. He must **be** (be) at home now.*
 2. *The ground is wet. It **must have rained** (rain) last night.*
 3. *She isn't answering her phone. She **must be sleeping** (sleep).*
1. Workers in noisy factories must _____ (wear) ear plugs to protect their hearing.
 2. The traffic is terrible today. We must _____ (be) patient.
 3. I can't find my keys. I must _____ (leave) them at the office yesterday.

4. Look at all these people with headphones. They must _____ (try) to block out the noise on the subway.
5. To reduce noise from household chores, we must _____ (use) appliances like vacuum cleaners and mixer grinders more thoughtfully.
6. Their population has decreased drastically. The excessive noise must _____ (affect) their ability to reproduce.
7. It's very late, and all the lights are off. The neighbors must _____ (sleep).
8. For better urban planning, cities must _____ (create) 'No-Noise' zones.
9. He knows everything about the accident. He must _____ (witness) it.
10. To eradicate noise pollution completely, our understanding of it must _____ (be) complete.

Ex.10 Translate into English.

1. У него были очень доверительные отношения с отцом. Не может быть, чтобы отец был к нему безразличен.
2. Разлука с матерью была травматичной для ребенка. Неужели он смог справиться с этим сам?
3. Где мое чувство спокойствия? Неужели я его потеряла?
4. Он в самом деле демонстрирует полное эмоциональное равновесие? Неужели он не чувствует напряжения?
5. Ребенок не проявляет никакого беспокойства. Не может быть, чтобы он чувствовал опасность.
6. Я встречалась с ним вчера, и он был в подавленном настроении. Не может быть, чтобы он уже восстановил свое равновесие.
7. Где мы? Эта обстановка кажется совсем незнакомой. Неужели мы заблудились?
8. Не видела этого ребенка долгое время. Неужели он так сильно вырос?
9. Не могу понять, как они достигли такого взаимопонимания. Неужели они преодолели все трудности сами?
10. Что это за эмоция? Неужели это ревность?

Ex.11 Translate into English, focus on negation.

1. Неужели он не верит мне?
2. Неужели они не слышали шума?
3. Не может быть, что они не объявили победителя.

4. Не может быть, что пациент не спит сейчас.
5. Неужели никто из вас не читал «Гарри Поттера»?
6. Не мог он не сознаться (admit).
7. Неужели собака не залаяла?
8. Неужели вам не нравится ее яблочный пирог?
9. Не может быть, что вам не понравились картины Поля Гогена.
10. Неужели это имя вам не знакомо?

Ex.12 Complete the sentences using can, may, or must. Choose the most suitable verb based on the context.

1. Strong emotions _____ cause you to take actions you might not normally perform.
2. According to the James-Lange theory, you _____ interpret your physical reactions to understand your emotion.
3. The physiological responses for fear, anger, and excitement _____ be remarkably similar.
4. To study emotions effectively, researchers _____ create intense situations in the laboratory, but this is difficult.
5. When you see a grizzly bear, your heart _____ start to race; it's an automatic response.
6. We _____ define emotion as a complex state of feeling that influences behavior.
7. Depending on the individual, a person's face _____ flush or pale when they are angry.
8. A newborn baby _____ feel sensations, but it _____ not control its body movements well.
9. The mother's personality _____ intervene between the child and its early experiences.
10. For healthy development, a child's emotional needs _____ be centered on the mother in the first years of life.
11. Parents _____ be confident and happy, as children are very sensible to their parents' emotions.
12. A child _____ lose its emotional equilibrium if the parents are anxious.

Ex.13 Complete the sentences, using the construction *must + infinitive or must + have + Past Participle (V3/ed)*

Example: *His hands are trembling, and he's breathing heavily. → He must be very nervous.*

1. After the therapy session, she looks relieved and peaceful. The session _____ very helpful for her.
2. He reacts with extreme anger to even the smallest criticism. He _____ very fragile self-esteem.
3. She always chooses partners who are emotionally unavailable. This _____ a unconscious pattern from her past.
4. He is able to remain perfectly calm in a situation that would panic anyone else. He _____ extensive training in stress management.
5. She forgot about an appointment that was very important to her. She _____ under a lot of stress lately.
6. This child has a very strong and secure bond with his mother. He _____ formed a healthy attachment during the first stage of development.
7. The parents are very confident and happy in their attitude. Their child _____ feel very secure and accepted.
8. The relationship with the father becomes important after the age of four. For a seven-year-old, this bond _____ be quite significant by now.
9. The child's ability to control his motor functions is quite unformed at birth. Sorting and assimilating all the sensory experiences _____ require a lot of mental effort.
10. The mother's personality is the most important factor for a baby's emotional world. Her influence on the child's experience _____ be enormous.

Ex.14 Translate into English, using modal verbs

1. Вам не обязательно быть идеальным; позвольте себе ошибаться.
2. Психолог должен сохранять нейтралитет и не осуждать.
3. Возможно, эта травма повлияла на его способность доверять людям.
4. Вы не можете контролировать мысли, которые приходят вам в голову, но вы можете контролировать свою реакцию на них.
5. Ему следует обратиться за профессиональной помощью, если он чувствует, что не справляется сам.
6. Дети могут не осознавать, что их поведение является следствием стресса.
7. Эта техника может помочь, а может и нет, но попробовать стоит.
8. Он должно быть, очень устал от постоянного стресса.
9. Вам не нужно скрывать свои чувства здесь, это безопасное пространство.

10. Возможно, она чувствует себя одиноко, даже когда находится в компании людей.
11. Он, должно быть, очень подавлен, раз отказался от встречи с друзьями.
12. Это не может быть простой усталостью; здесь что-то более серьёзное.
13. Неужели он действительно может скрывать свои истинные чувства?
14. Разве такое поведение может быть нормальным?
15. Он, может быть, и не осознаёт, как его слова ранят других.

TEST

Choose the best variants of modal verbs (can, may, must) with the appropriate infinitive.

1. After the therapy session, the client _____ (должно быть, почувствовал себя лучше). That was the usual result.
a) must feel b) could feel c) might have felt d) must have felt
2. _____ (Неужели Джон не понял) the basic psychological concepts after all these sessions?
a) Can John have failed to understand b) Couldn't John have understood
c) Could John not have understood d) John can't have understood
3. _____ (Не может быть, что Анна отказалась) from therapy! As far as I know she was making good progress.
a) Anna couldn't have refused b) Anna was not able to refuse
c) Anna might not have refused d) Anna must not refuse
4. By the end of the meditation session, he _____ (вероятно, достиг) a deep state of relaxation.
a) could have achieved b) must have been achieving c) might achieve d) must have achieved
5. Sarah works with trauma patients every day. She _____ (очевидно, устает) when she finishes her sessions.
a) could have been tired b) could be tired c) must have been tired d) must be tired
6. Poor Mark! It was just a misunderstanding. _____ (Не может быть, что он намеренно обидел) his friend.
a) might not have hurt b) couldn't hurt c) couldn't have hurt d) must have hurt

7. The latest research shows that _____ (возможно, существует) a stronger connection between thoughts and emotions than we realize.
a) there could have be b) there could be c) there might be d) there maybe
8. _____ (Мог бы ты говорить потише) during the meditation session please?
a) Could you have spoken b) Could you speak c) Might you speak d) May you speak
9. You _____ (вероятно, шутишь)! Lisa can't have overcome her anxiety so quickly.
a) might be kidding b) must be kidding c) may kid d) must have been kidding
10. Your therapist _____ (мог бы помочь) you with that emotional issue. I wish she had.
a) could help b) may have helped c) might help d) might have helped
11. I'm afraid we _____ (не можем решить) this psychological problem easily.
a) cannot solve b) couldn't solve c) might not have solved d) cannot solve
12. If I understood my emotions better, I _____ (я бы мог улучшить) my relationships.
a) could have improved b) could improve c) may improve d) must improve
13. How was Maria's first therapy session? It _____ (очевидно, прошел) well. She looked relieved when I saw her.
a) might have been b) could be c) must have been d) could have been
14. Look for your relaxation notes on the desk. I _____ (не может быть, что оставил) them there because I always keep them in my folder.
a) couldn't have left b) could leave c) might not have left d) must not have left
15. As soon as I entered the therapy room, I _____ (почувствовал) a calm atmosphere.
a) might have felt b) was able to feel c) could feel d) could have felt

APPENDIX

Table of 50 irregular verbs
Таблица 50 неправильных глаголов

Infinitive	Past Simple	Participle II	Translation into Russian
Инфинитив	Прошедшее время	Причастие II	Перевод на русский
1) to be	was/were	been	быть, находиться
2) to bear	bore	born	нести
3) to begin	began	begun	начинать(ся)
4) to bring	brought	brought	приносить
5) to build	built	built	строить
6) to buy	bought	bought	покупать
7) to choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
8) to do	did	done	делать
9) to draw	drew	drawn	рисовать, тащить
10) to drink	drank	drunk	пить
11) to eat	ate	eaten	есть
12) to fall	fell	fallen	падать
13) to feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
14) to find	found	found	искать, находить
15) to fly	flew	flown	летать
16) to forbid	forbade	forbidden	запрещать
17) to forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
18) to forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощать
19) to get	got	got	получать
20) to give	gave	given	давать
21) to go	went	gone	идти, ехать
22) to hang	hung	hung	висеть, вешать
23) to have	had	had	иметь
24) to hear	heard	heard	слышать
25) to hold	held	held	держать
26) to know	knew	known	знать
27) to leap	leapt/leaped	leapt/leaped	прыгать, скакать
28) to leave	left	left	покидать, оставлять
29) to lose	lost	lost	терять
30) to make	made	made	делать

31) to meet	met	met	встречать
32) to put	put	put	класть, ставить
33) to read [i:]	read [e]	read [e]	читать
34) to rise	rose	risen	поднимать
35) to run	ran	run	бежать
36) to say	said	said	говорить, сказать
37) to see	saw	seen	видеть
38) to sell	sold	sold	продавать
39) to show	showed	shown	показывать
40) to sit	sat	sat	сидеть
41) to sleep	slept	slept	спать
42) to speak	spoke	spoken	говорить,
43) to spend	spent	spent	разговаривать
44) to stand	stood	stood	тратить, проводить
45) to swim	swam	swum	стоять
46) to take	took	taken	плавать
47) to teach	taught	taught	взять, брать
48) to tell	told	told	учить, обучать
49) to think	thought	thought	сказать, сообщить
50) to write	wrote	written	думать писать

RESOURCES

1. Грамматика английского языка. Пособие для студентов педагогических институтов / В. Л. Каушанская, Р. Л. Ковнер, О. Н. Кожевникова, Е. В. Прокофьева и др. — 5-е изд., испр. и доп. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 384 с.: ил. — (Высшее образование). — ISBN 978-5-8112-3445-5
2. Дроздова Т. Ю. English Grammar. Reference and Practice / Т.Ю. Дроздова, А.И. Берестова, В.Г. Маилова. — Санкт-Петербург : Антология, 2015. — 464 с. — ISBN 978-5-94962-163-9.
3. Качалова К. Н., Израилевич Е.Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка : в 2-х т, Т2, К.: Методика, 2003. — 304 с. — ISBN 966-7269-15-9.
4. Azar, B. S. (2002). Understanding and using English grammar (3rd ed.). Longman.
5. Murphy, R. (2019). English Grammar in Use: A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English (5th ed.). Cambridge University Press.
6. Swan, M. (2020). Practical English Usage (4th ed.). Oxford University Press.
7. <https://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org/>

*Krukovskaya O.A.,
Savitskaya N.V., Yermolova T.V.*

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR
IN THEORY AND PRACTICE**

Учебное пособие
для студентов неязыковых вузов

Компьютерная верстка *В.В. Забковой*

Формат 60×90/16. Гарнитура «Times»

Электронное издание

Московский государственный психолого-педагогический университет
127051, г. Москва, ул. Сретенка, д. 29; тел.: (495) 632-90-77; факс: (495) 632-92-52